Guidelines for Implementation: DASH-IF Interoperability Points

June 12, 2016

DASH Industry Forum

Version 3.3



Scope

- 2 The scope of the DASH-IF InterOperability Points (IOPs) defined in this document is to provide support for
- 3 high-quality video distribution for over the top services using H.264/AVC and H.265/HEVC. Both live and
- 4 on-demand services are supported. The specified features enable relevant use cases including on-demand,
- 5 live services, ad insertion, trick modes, content protection and subtitling. Extensions for multi-channel audio
- 6 are defined.
- Any identified bugs or missing features may be submitted through the DASH-IF issue tracker at https://gi-
- $8 \qquad \hbox{treports.com/issue/Dash-Industry-Forum/DASH-IF-IOP}.$

Disclaimer

- 2 This is a document made available by DASH-IF. The technology embodied in this document may
- 3 involve the use of intellectual property rights, including patents and patent applications owned or
- 4 controlled by any of the authors or developers of this document. No patent license, either implied
- 5 or express, is granted to you by this document. DASH-IF has made no search or investigation for
- 6 such rights and DASH-IF disclaims any duty to do so. The rights and obligations which apply to
- 7 DASH-IF documents, as such rights and obligations are set forth and defined in the DASH-IF
- 8 Bylaws and IPR Policy including, but not limited to, patent and other intellectual property license
- 9 rights and obligations. A copy of the DASH-IF Bylaws and IPR Policy can be obtained at
- 10 http://dashif.org/.
- 11 The material contained herein is provided on an "AS IS" basis and to the maximum extent per-
- mitted by applicable law, this material is provided AS IS, and the authors and developers of this
- material and DASH-IF hereby disclaim all other warranties and conditions, either express, implied
- or statutory, including, but not limited to, any (if any) implied warranties, duties or conditions of
- merchantability, of fitness for a particular purpose, of accuracy or completeness of responses, of
- workmanlike effort, and of lack of negligence.
- 17 In addition, this document may include references to documents and/or technologies controlled
- by third parties. Those third party documents and technologies may be subject to third party rules
- and licensing terms. No intellectual property license, either implied or express, to any third party
- 20 material is granted to you by this document or DASH-IF. DASH-IF makes no any warranty what-
- soever for such third party material.

Contents

2	GUIDELINES FOR IMPLEMENTATION: DASH-IF INTEROPERABILITY POINTS	I
3	SCOPE	1
4	DISCLAIMER	2
5	CONTENTS	3
6	LIST OF FIGURES	7
7	LIST OF TABLES	8
8	ACRONYMS, ABBREVIATIONS AND DEFINITIONS	
9	REFERENCES	12
10	1. INTRODUCTION	
11	2. CONTEXT AND CONVENTIONS	
12	2.1. RELATION TO MPEG-DASH AND OTHER DASH SPECIFICATIONS	_
13	2.2. COMPATIBILITY AND EXTENSIONS TO EARLIER VERSIONS	
14	2.2.1. Summary of Version 3 Modifications	
15	2.2.2. Backward-Compatibility Considerations	
16	2.3. Use of Key Words	
17	2.3.1. Background	
18	2.3.2. Key Words	
19	2.3.3. Mapping to DASH-IF Assets	
20	2.4. Definition and Usage of Interoperability Points	
21	2.4.1. Profile Definition in ISO/IEC 23009-1	6
22	2.4.2. Usage of Profiles	
23	2.4.3. Interoperability Points and Extensions	
24	3. DASH-RELATED ASPECTS	
25	3.1. Scope	_
26	3.2. DASH FORMATS	
27	3.2.1. Introduction	
28	3.2.2. Media Presentation Description constraints for v1 & v2 Clients	
29	3.2.3. Segment format constraints	
30	3.2.4. Presence of Attributes and Elements	
31	3.2.5. MPD Dimension Constraints	
32	3.2.6. Generic Metadata	
33	3.2.7. DASH Timing Model	
34	3.2.8. Bandwidth and Minimum Buffer Time	
35	3.2.9. Trick Mode Support	
36	3.2.10. Adaptation Set Constraints	
37	3.2.11. Media Time Information of Segment	
38	3.2.12. Content Offering with Periods	
39	3.2.13. Adaptation Set Media Type	
40	3.3. CLIENT IMPLEMENTATION REQUIREMENTS AND GUIDELINES	
41	3.3.1. Overview	
42	3.3.2. DASH Client Guidelines	
43	3.3.3. Seamless switching	
44 45	3.3.4. DASH Client Requirements	
45	3.4. Transport and Protocol-Related Issues	24

1	<i>3.4.1.</i>	General	24
2	<i>3.4.2.</i>	Server Requirements and Guidelines	24
3	<i>3.4.3.</i>	Client Requirements and Guidelines	24
4	<i>3.4.4.</i>	Transforming Proxies and Other Adaptation Middleboxes	25
5	3.5. SYN	CHRONIZATION CONSIDERATIONS	25
6	3.6. CON	NSIDERATIONS FOR LIVE SERVICES	25
7	3.7. CON	SIDERATIONS ON AD INSERTION	25
8	3.8. Swi	TCHING ACROSS ADAPTATION SETS	25
9	4. LIVE SER	VICES	26
10	4.1. INTE	RODUCTION	26
11	4.2. OVE	RVIEW DYNAMIC AND LIVE MEDIA PRESENTATIONS	27
12		iamic Segment Download	
13	<i>4.3.1.</i>	Background and Assumptions	30
14	4.3.2.	Preliminaries	
15	4.3.3.	Service Offering Requirements and Guidelines	36
16	4.3.4.	Client Operation, Requirements and Guidelines	45
17	<i>4.3.5.</i>	Additional DVB-DASH alignment aspects	
18	4.3.6.	Considerations on live edge	50
19	4.4. SIM	PLE LIVE SERVICE OFFERING INCLUDING MPD UPDATES	50
20	4.4.1.	Background and Assumptions	50
21	4.4.2.	Preliminaries	
22	4.4.3.	Service Offering Requirements and Guidelines	52
23	4.4.4.	MPD-based Live Client Operation based on MPD	
24		D AND SEGMENT-BASED LIVE SERVICE OFFERING	
25	<i>4.5.1.</i>	Preliminaries	
26	4.5.2.	Service Offering Requirements and Guidelines	
27	<i>4.5.3.</i>	Client Requirements and Guidelines	
28	4.6. Pro	OVISIONING OF LIVE CONTENT IN ON-DEMAND MODE	
29	4.6.1.	Scenario	
30	4.6.2.	Content Offering Requirements and Recommendations	
31	4.6.3.	Client Behavior	
32	4.7. AVA	ALABILITY TIME SYNCHRONIZATION BETWEEN CLIENT AND SERVER	
33	4.7.1.	Background	
34	4.7.2.	Service Provider Requirements and Guidelines	
35	4.7.3.	Client Requirements and Guidelines	67
36		BUST OPERATION	67
37	4.8.1.	Background	67
38	4.8.2.	Tools for Robust Operations	
39	4.8.3.	Synchronization Loss of Segmenter	
40	4.8.4.	Encoder Clock Drift	
41	4.8.5.	Segment Unavailability	
12	4.8.6.	Swapping across Redundant Tools	
13	4.8.7.	Service Provider Requirements and Guidelines	
14	4.8.8.	Client Requirements and Guidelines	
45		EROPERABILITY ASPECTS	
1 6	4.9.1.	Introduction	
17	4.9.2	Simple Live Operation	69

1	4.9.	3.	Main Live Operation	70
2	5. AD I	INSE	RTION IN DASH	71
3	5.1.	INT	RODUCTION	71
4	5.1.	1.	General	71
5	5.1.	2.	Definitions	71
6	5.1.	3.	DASH Concepts	72
7	5.2.	Arc	CHITECTURES	75
8	5.3.	SER	RVER-BASED ARCHITECTURE	76
9	5.3.	1.	Introduction	76
10	5.3.	2.	Mapping to DASH	76
11	5.3.	3.	Workflows	79
12	5.3.	4.	Examples	83
13	5.4.	Аы	P-BASED ARCHITECTURE	85
14	5.4.	1.	Introduction	85
15	<i>5.4.</i>	2.	Mapping to DASH	86
16	<i>5.4.</i>	3.	Workflows	88
17	5.5.	Ехт	TENSIONS FOR AD INSERTION	89
18	5.5.	1.	Asset Identifiers	89
19	5.5.	2.	Remote Periods	89
20	5.5.	3.	User-defined events	89
21	5.6.	INT	EROPERABILITY ASPECTS	90
22	5.6.	1.	Server-based Ad insertion	90
23	5.6.	2.	App-based Ad Insertion	90
24	6. MED	DIA (CODING TECHNOLOGIES	90
25	6.1.	INT	RODUCTION	90
26	6.2.		DEO	91
27	6.2.	1.	General	91
28	6.2.	2.	DASH-specific aspects for H.264/AVC video	91
29	6.2.	3.	DASH-specific aspects for H.265/HEVC video	92
30	6.2.		Video Metadata	
31	6.2.		Adaptation Sets Constraints	
32	6.3.	Αu	DIO	
33	6.3.	1.	General	
34	6.3.	2.	DASH-specific aspects for HE-AACv2 audio	95
35	6.3.	3.	Audio Metadata	96
36	6.4.	ΑU	XILIARY COMPONENTS	96
37	<i>6.4.</i>	1.	Introduction	
38	6.4.		Subtitles and Closed Captioning	96
39	6.4.	3.	CEA-608/708 in SEI messages	
40	<i>6.4.</i>	4.	Timed Text (IMSC1)	100
41	<i>6.4.</i>	5.	Guidelines for side-loaded TTML and WebVTT files	100
1 2	6.4.		Annotation of Subtitles	
1 3	7. CON		IT PROTECTION AND SECURITY	
14	7.1.		RODUCTION	
1 5	7.2.	HT	TPS AND DASH	101
1 6	7.3.	BAS	SE TECHNOLOGIES SUMMARY	103
17	7 4	ISC) BMFF SUPPORT FOR COMMON ENCRYPTION AND DRM	104

1	7.4.1.	Box Hierarchy	104
2	7.4.2.	ISO BMFF Structure Overview	106
3	7.5. PER	IODIC RE-AUTHORIZATION	107
4	7.5.1.	Introduction	107
5	7.5.2.	Use Cases and Requirements	107
6	7.5.3.	Implementation Options	107
7	7.6. MP	D SUPPORT FOR ENCRYPTION AND DRM SIGNALING	109
8	7.6.1.	Introduction	109
9	7.6.2.	Use of the Content Protection Descriptor	109
10	7.7. Add	DITIONAL CONTENT PROTECTION CONSTRAINTS	
11	7.7.1.	ISO BMFF Content Protection Constraints	
12	7.7.2.	MPD Content Protections Constraints	111
13	7.7.3.	Other Content Protections Constraints	112
14	7.7.4.	Additional Constraints for Periodic Re-Authorization	112
15	7.7.5.	Encryption of Different Representations	
16	7.7.6.	Encryption of Multiple Periods	
17	7.7.7.	DRM System Identification	
18	7.7.8.	Protection of Media Presentations that Include SD, HD and UHD Adaptation Sets	
19	7.8. Wo	PRKFLOW OVERVIEW	
20		INTEROPERABILITY POINTS	
21	8.1. INTI	RODUCTION	118
22		SH-AVC/264 MAIN	
23	8.2.1.	Introduction	118
24	8.2.2.	Definition	
25	8.3. DA	SH-AVC/264 HIGH	119
26	8.3.1.	Introduction	119
27	8.3.2.	Definition	119
28	8.4. DA	SH-IF IOP SIMPLE	119
29	8.4.1.	Introduction	119
30	8.4.2.	Definition	119
31	8.5. DAS	SH-IF IOP Main	120
32	8.5.1.	Introduction	120
33	8.5.2.	Definition	120
34	9. MULTI-C	HANNEL AUDIO EXTENSION	121
35	9.1. Scc)PE	121
36	9.2. TEC	HNOLOGIES	121
37	9.2.1.	Dolby Multichannel Technologies	121
38	9.2.2.	DTS-HD	
39	9.2.3.	MPEG Surround	122
40	<i>9.2.4.</i>	MPEG-4 High Efficiency AAC Profile v2, level 6	123
41	9.2.5.	MPEG-H 3D Audio	123
12	9.3. CLIE	ENT IMPLEMENTATION GUIDELINES	
13		ENSIONS	
14	9.4.1.	General	
15	9.4.2.	Dolby Extensions	
16	9.4.3.	DTS-HD Interoperability Points	
17	944	MPFG Surround Interonerability Points	126

1	9.4.5.	MPEG HE-AAC Multichannel Interoperability Points	127
2	9.4.6.	MPEG-H 3D Audio Interoperability Points	128
3	ANNEX A	EXAMPLES FOR PROFILE SIGNALLING	1
4	ANNEX B	LIVE SERVICES - USE CASES AND ARCHITECTURE	2
5	B.1 B.	ASELINE USE CASES	
6	B.1.1	Use Case 1: Live Content Offered as On-Demand	
7	B.1.2	Use Case 2: Scheduled Service with known duration and Operating at live edge	
8	B.1.3	Use Case 3: Scheduled Service with known duration and Operating at live edge and	
9	,	ıffer	
10	B.1.4	Use Case 4: Scheduled Live Service known duration, but unknown Segment URLs	
11	B.1.5	Use Case 5: 24/7 Live Service	
12	B.1.6	Use Case 6: Approximate Media Presentation Duration Known	
13		ASELINE ARCHITECTURE FOR DASH-BASED LIVE SERVICE	
14		ISTRIBUTION OVER MULTICAST	
15		YPICAL PROBLEMS IN LIVE DISTRIBUTION	
16	B.4.1	Introduction	
17 18	B.4.2	Client Server Synchronization Issues	
10 19	В.4.3 В.4.4	Synchronization Loss of Segmenter Encoder Clock Drift	
20	в.4.4 В.4.5	Segment Unavailability	
20 21	в.4.5 В.4.6	Swapping across Redundant Tools	
22	B.4.7	CDN Issues	
23	B.4.8	High End-to-end Latency	
24	B.4.9	Buffer Management & Bandwidth Estimation	
25	B.4.10	Start-up Delay and Synchronization Audio/Video	
26		DVANCED USE CASES	
27	B.5.1	Introduction	
28	B.5.2	Use Case 7: Live Service with undetermined end	7
29	B.5.3	Use Case 8: 24/7 Live Service with canned advertisement	7
30	B.5.4	Use case 9: 24x7 live broadcast with media time discontinuities	7
31	B.5.5	Use case 10: 24x7 live broadcast with Segment discontinuities	7
32			
22	list o	of Figures	
33		n i iguies	
34	Figure 1 Ov	verview Timing Model	14
35	•	ASH aspects of a DASH-AVC/264 client compared to a client supporting the	
36		ISO BMFF live and on-demand profile.	
37		fferent Client Models	
38	•	egment Availability on the Server for different time NOW (blue = valid but	
39		ble segment, green = available Segment, red = unavailable Segment)	
40		mple Client Model	
41	•	Ivanced Client Model	
42	•	Link resolution	
	•		
43	riquie 8: 5	erver-based architecture	/b

1	Figure 9 Using an Asset Identifier	78
2	Figure 10: Live Workflow	79
3	Figure 11: Ad Decision	82
4	Figure 12: Example of MPD for "Top Gun" movie	85
5	Figure 13: App-based architecture	85
6	Figure 14 Inband carriage of SCTE 35 cue message	87
7	Figure 15: In-MPD carriage of SCTE 35 cue message	87
8	Figure 16: Linear workflow for app-driven architecture	88
9	Figure 17: Visualization of box structure for single key content	105
10	Figure 18: Visualization of box structure with key rotation	105
11	Figure 19: PSSH with version numbers and KIDs.	108
12	Figure 20 Logical Roles that Exchange DRM Information and Media	115
13	Figure 21 Example of Information flow for DRM license retrieval	117
14	Figure 22 Typical Deployment Scenario for DASH-based live services	3
15	Figure 23 Typical Deployment Scenario for DASH-based live services partially offered the	rough
16	MBMS (unidirectional FLUTE distribution)	4
. –	List of Tables	
17	LIST OF TADICS	
18	Table 1 DASH-IF Interoperability Points	1
19	Table 2 DASH-IF Interoperability Point Extensions	
20	Table 3 Identifiers defined in this Document	
21	- Subtitle Adaptation Set: An Adaptation Set that contains visual overlay information	to be
22	rendered as auxiliary or accessibility information. Such an Adaptation Set is identif	
23	@mimeType="application/mp4", a Role descriptor with @schemeId	
24	urn:mpeg:dash:role:2011" and @value="subtitle" and, an @codecs para	
25	as defined in Table 4 or "application/ttml+xml"	
26	Table 5 Main features and differences of simple and main live services	
27 28	Table 6 Information related to Segment Information and Availability Times for a dynamic s	
20 29	Table 7 - Basis Carries Offering	
	Table 7 – Basic Service Offering	
30	Table 9 Multi-Period Service Offering	
31	Table 10 – Service Offering with Segment Timeline	
32		
33	Table 11 – Information related to Live Service Offering with MPD-controlled MPD Updates	
34	Table 12 – Basic Service Offering with MPD Updates	
35	Table 13 – Service Offering with Segment Timeline and MUP greater than 0	
36	Table 14 – Service Offering with MPD and Segment-based Live Services	
37 38	Table 15 InbandEventStream@value attribute for scheme with a "urn:mpeg:dash:event:2012"	
38 20		
39	Table 16 – Basic Service Offering with Inband Events	
40	Table 17 H.264 (AVC) Codecs parameter according to RFC6381 [13]	92

1	Table 18 S	ignaling of HEVC IRAP Pictures in the ISOBMFF and in DASH	92
2		odecs parameter according to ISO/IEC 14496-15 [12]	
3		E-AACv2 Codecs parameter according to RFC6381 [13]	
4 5		ubtitle MIME type and codecs parameter according to IANA and W3C registries oxes relevant for DRM systems	
6		olby Technologies: Codec Parameters and ISO BMFF encapsulation	
7		OTS Codec Parameters and ISO BMFF encapsulation	
8 9		odecs parameter according to RFC6381 [13] and ISO BMFF encapsulation for MF	
10	Table 26 C	odecs parameter according to RFC6381 [13] and ISO BMFF encapsulation	.123
11	Table 27 C	odecs parameter and ISO BMFF encapsulation	.124
12			
13	Acro	nyms, abbreviations and definitions	
13	7 (0101	Tyrrio, abbreviatione and deminione	
14	For seven	yms, abbreviations and definitions refer to ISO/IEC 23009-1 [4]. Additional def	fini
15	-	be provided in the context of individual sections.	.1111-
16	In addition	n, the following abbreviations and acronyms are used in this document:	
17	AAC	Advanced Audio Coding	
18	AFD	Active Format Description	
19	AST	Availability Start Time	
20	AVC	Advanced Video Coding	
21	BMFF	Base Media File Format	
22	CDN	Content Delivery Network	
23	CEA	Consumer Electronics Association	
24	CT	Composition Time	
25	DRM	Digital Rights Management	
26	DT	Decode Time	
27	DTV	Digital Television	
28	DVB	Digital Video Broadcasting	
29	DVS	Digital Video Subcommittee	
30	EDL	Encoding Decision List	
31	EME	Encrypted Media Extension	

1	EPT	Earliest Presentation Time
2	FCC	Federal Communications Commission
3	GOP	Group-of-Pictures
4	HD	High-Definition
5	HDMI	High-Definition Multimedia Interface
6	HE-AAC	High Efficiency AAC
7	HEVC	High-Efficiency Video Coding
8	KID	common Key Identifier
9	IAB	International Advertising Bureau
10	IDR	Instantaneous Decoder Refresh
11	IOP	InterOperability Point
12	ISO	International Standards Organization
13	HEVC	High Efficiency Video Coding
14	HTTP	HyperText Transport Protocol
15	MBT	Minimum Buffer Time
16	MHA	MPEG-H 3D Audio
17	MPEG	Moving Pictures Experts Group
18	MUP	Minimum Update Period
19	NAL	Network Abstraction Layer
20	OTT	Over-The-Top
21	PCM	Pulse Code Modulation
22	PPS	Picture Parameter Set
23	PS	Parametric Stereo
24	PT	Presentation Time
25	PTO	Presentation Time Offset
26	PVR	Personal Video Recorder
27	RFC	Request for Comments
28	SAP	Stream Access Point
29	SAET	Segment Availability End Time

1	SAST	Segment Availability Start Time
2	SBR	Spectral Band Replication
3	SCTE	Society of Cable Telecommunications Engineers
4	SD	Standard Definition
5	SEI	Supplemental Enhancement Information
6	SMPTE	Society of Motion Picture and Television Engineers
7	SPD	Suggested Presentation Delay
8	SPS	Sequence Parameter Set
9	TSB	Time Shift Buffer depth
10	TT	Timed Text
11	TTML	Timed Text Markup Language
12	UHD	Ultra-High Definitions
13	URL	Universal Resource Location
14	UTC	Universal Time Clock
15	UUID	Universally Unique Identifier
16	VAST	Video Ad Serving Template
17	VPS	Video Parameter Set

References

2 3 4 5 6 7		 Notes: 1) If appropriate, the references refer to specific versions of the specifications. However, implementers are encouraged to check later versions of the same specification, if available. Such versions may provide further clarifications and corrections. However, new features added in new versions of specifications are not added automatically. 2) Specifications not yet officially available are marked in <i>italics</i>.
8 9	[1]	DASH-IF DASH-264/AVC Interoperability Points, version 1.0, available at http://dashif.org/w/2013/06/DASH-AVC-264-base-v1.03.pdf
10 11	[2]	DASH-IF DASH-264/AVC Interoperability Points, version 2.0, available at http://dashif.org/w/2013/08/DASH-AVC-264-v2.00-hd-mca.pdf
12 13 14 15	[3]	ISO/IEC 23009-1:2012/Cor.1:2013 Information technology Dynamic adaptive streaming over HTTP (DASH) Part 1: Media presentation description and segment formats. Note: this document is superseded by reference [4], but maintained as the initial version of this document is provided in the above reference.
16 17 18	[4]	ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014/Cor.2:2016/Amd.2:2015 Information technology Dynamic adaptive streaming over HTTP (DASH) Part 1: Media presentation description and segment formats.
19 20 21	[5]	ISO/IEC 23009-1:2016/Amd.3 Information technology Dynamic adaptive streaming over HTTP (DASH) Part 1: Media presentation description and segment format, Amendments 3: Authentication, MPD linking, Callback Event, Period Continuity and
22 23 24		other Extensions Note: ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014/Amd.3:2015 is expected to be published by Q4/2016. The latest document is available in the MPEG output document w15980.
25 26 27 28 29	[6]	ISO/IEC 23009-1:2017/Amd.4 Information technology Dynamic adaptive streaming over HTTP (DASH) Part 1: Media presentation description and segment formats, Amendment 4: Segment Independent SAP Signalling (SISSI), MPD chaining, MPD reset and other extensions Note: ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014/Amd.4:2017 is expected to be published by Q1/2017. The latest doc-
30 31 32	[7]	ument is available in the MPEG output document w15982. ISO/IEC 23009-1:2016/Cor.3 Information technology Dynamic adaptive streaming over HTTP (DASH) Part 1: Media presentation description and segment formats. Cor-
33 34 35		rigendum 3 Note: ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014/Cor.3:2016 is expected to be published by Q4/2016. The latest document is available in the MPEG output document w15983.
36 37	[8]	ISO/IEC 23009-2:2014: Information technology Dynamic adaptive streaming over HTTP (DASH) Part 2: Conformance and Reference.
38 39	[9]	ISO/IEC 23009-3:2014: Information technology Dynamic adaptive streaming over HTTP (DASH) Part 3: Implementation Guidelines.
40 41	[10]	ISO/IEC 14496-12:2015 Information technology Coding of audio-visual objects Part 12: ISO base media file format.
42 43 44	[11]	ITU-T Recommendation H.264 (01/2012): "Advanced video coding for generic audiovisual services" ISO/IEC 14496-10:2010: "Information technology – Coding of audio-visual objects – Part 10: Advanced Video Coding".

- 1 [12] ISO/IEC 14496-15:2014/Cor 1:2015: Information technology -- Coding of audio-visual objects -- Part 15: Carriage of network abstraction layer (NAL) unit structured video in ISO base media file format.
- 4 [13] IETF RFC 6381, The 'Codecs' and 'Profiles' Parameters for "Bucket" Media Types, August 2011.
- ISO/IEC 14496-3:2009 Information technology -- Coding of audio-visual objects -- Part 3: Audio with Corrigendum 1:2009, Corrigendum 2:2011, Corrigendum 3:2012, Amendment 1:2009, Amendment 2:2010, Amendment 3:2012, and Amendment 4:2014.
- 9 [15] ISO/IEC 14496-14:2003/Amd 1:2010 Information technology -- Coding of audio-visual objects -- Part 14: The MP4 File Format
- 11 [16] 3GPP (2005-01-04). "ETSI TS 126 401 V6.1.0 (2004-12) Universal Mobile Telecommunications System (UMTS); General audio codec audio processing functions; Enhanced aacPlus general audio codec; General description (3GPP TS 26.401 version 6.1.0 Release 6)"
- 15 [17] ANSI/CEA-708-E: Digital Television (DTV) Closed Captioning, August 2013
- 16 [18] 3GPP TS 26.245: "Transparent end-to-end Packet switched Streaming Service (PSS); Timed text format"
- 18 [19] W3C Timed Text Markup Language 1 (TTML1) (Second Edition) 24 September 2013.
- 19 [20] SMPTE ST 2052-1:2013 "Timed Text Format (SMPTE-TT)", 20 https://www.smpte.org/standards
- 21 [21] W3C WebVTT The Web Video Text Tracks,— http://dev.w3.org/html5/webvtt/
- ITU-T Recommendation H.265 (04/2015): "Advanced video coding for generic audiovisual services" | ISO/IEC 23008-2:2014: "High Efficiency Coding and Media Delivery in Heterogeneous Environments Part 2: High Efficiency Video Coding", downloadable here: http://www.itu.int/rec/T-REC-H.265
- 26 [23] EBU Tech 3350, "EBU-TT, Part 1, Subtitling format definition", July 2012, http://tech.ebu.ch/docs/tech/tech3350.pdf?vers=1.0
- 28 [24] IETF RFC 7230, Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP/1.1): Message Syntax and Routing, June 2014.
- 30 [25] IETF RFC 7231, Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP/1.1): Semantics and Content, June 2014.
- 32 [26] IETF RFC 7232, Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP/1.1): Conditional Requests, June 2014.
- 34 [27] IETF RFC 7233, Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP/1.1): Range Requests, June 2014.
- 35 [28] IETF RFC 7234, Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP/1.1): Caching, June 2014.
- 36 [29] IETF RFC 7235, Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP/1.1): Authentication, June 2014.
- 37 [30] SMPTE RP 2052-10-2013: Conversion from CEA-608 Data to SMPTE-TT https://www.smpte.org/standards
- 39 [31] SMPTE RP 2052-11-2013: Conversion from CEA 708 to SMPTE-TT 40 https://www.smpte.org/standards
- 41 [32] ISO/IEC 14496-30:2014, "Timed Text and Other Visual Overlays in ISO Base Media File Format".
- 43 [33] ISO/IEC 23001-7:2016: "Information technology -- MPEG systems technologies -- Part 7: Common encryption in ISO base media file format files".
- 45 [34] DASH Industry Forum, "Guidelines for Implementation: DASH-AVC/264 Test Cases and Vectors".

- 1 [35] DASH Industry Forum, "Guidelines for Implementation: DASH-AVC/264 Conformance Software", http://dashif.org/conformance.html.
- 3 [36] DASH Identifiers Repository, available here: http://dashif.org/identifiers
- 4 [37] DTS 9302J81100, "Implementation of DTS Audio in Media Files Based on ISO/IEC 14496", http://www.dts.com/professionals/resources/resource-center.aspx
- 6 [38] ETSI TS 102 366 v1.2.1, Digital Audio Compression (AC-3, Enhanced AC-3) Standard (2008-08)
- 8 [39] MLP (Dolby TrueHD) streams within the ISO Base Media File Format, version 1.0, September 2009.
- 10 [40] ETSI TS 102 114 v1.3.1 (2011-08), "DTS Coherent Acoustics; Core and Extensions with Additional Profiles"
- 12 [41] ISO/IEC 23003-1:2007 Information technology -- MPEG audio technologies -- Part 1: MPEG Surround
- 14 [42] DTS 9302K62400, "Implementation of DTS Audio in Dynamic Adaptive Streaming over HTTP (DASH)", http://www.dts.com/professionals/resources/resource-center.aspx
- 16 [43] IETF RFC5905, "Network Time Protocol Version 4: Protocol and Algorithms Specification," June 2010.
- 18 [44] IETF RFC 6265: "HTTP State Management Mechanism", April 2011.
- 19 [45] ETSI TS 103 285 v.1.1.1: "MPEG-DASH Profile for Transport of ISO BMFF Based DVB Services over IP Based Networks".
- 21 [46] ANSI/SCTE 128-1 2013: "AVC Video Constraints for Cable Television, Part 1 Coding", available here: http://www.scte.org/documents/pdf/Stand-ards/ANSI SCTE%20128-1%202013.pdf
- 24 [47] IETF RFC 2119, "Key words for use in RFCs to Indicate Requirement Levels", April 1997.
- ISO: "ISO 639.2, Code for the Representation of Names of Languages Part 2: alpha-3 code," as maintained by the ISO 639/Joint Advisory Committee (ISO 639/JAC), http://www.loc.gov/standards/iso639-2/iso639jac.html; JAC home page: http://www.loc.gov/standards/iso639-2/iso639jac.html; ISO 639.2 standard online: http://www.loc.gov/standards/iso639-2/langhome.html.
- 31 [49] CEA-608-E, Line 21 Data Service, March 2008.
- 32 [50] IETF RFC 5234, "Augmented BNF for Syntax Specifications: ABNF", January 2008.
- SMPTE ST 2086:2014, "Mastering Display Color Volume Metadata Supporting High
 Luminance And Wide Color Gamut Images"
- 35 [52] ISO/IEC 23001-8:2013, "Information technology -- MPEG systems technologies -- Part 8: Coding-independent code points", available here: http://standards.iso.org/ittf/Public-lyAvailableStandards/c062088_ISO_IEC_23001-8_2013.zip
- 38 [53] IETF RFC 7164, "RTP and Leap Seconds", March 2014.
- DASH Industry Forum, "Guidelines for Implementation: DASH264 Interoperability Points", http://dashif.org/w/2013/08/DASH-AVC-264-v2.00-hd-mca.pdf.
- 41 [55] IAB Video Multiple Ad Playlist (VMAP), available at http://www.iab.net/me-42 dia/file/VMAPv1.0.pdf
- 43 [56] IAB Video Ad Serving Template (VAST), available at http://www.iab.net/me-dia/file/VASTv3.0.pdf
- 45 [57] ANSI/SCTE 35 2015, Digital Program Insertion Cueing Message for Cable

- 1 [58] ANSI/SCTE 67 2014, Recommended Practice for SCTE 35 Digital Program Insertion 2 Cueing Message for Cable
- 3 [59] ANSI/SCTE 214-1, MPEG DASH for IP-Based Cable Services, Part 1: MPD Constraints and Extensions
- 5 [60] ANSI/SCTE 214-3, MPEG DASH for IP-Based Cable Services, Part 3: DASH/FF Profile
- 6 [61] EIDR ID Format EIDR: ID Format, v1.2, March 2014, available at http://eidr.org/doc-uments/EIDR_ID_Format_v1.2.pdf
- 8 [62] Common Metadata, TR-META-CM, ver. 2.0, January 3, 2013, available at http://www.movielabs.com/md/md/v2.0/Common_Metadata_v2.0.pdf
- 10 [63] IETF RFC 4648, "The Base16, Base32, and Base64 Data Encodings", October 2006.
- 11 [64] W3C TTML Profiles for Internet Media Subtitles and Captions 1.0 (IMSC1), Editor's
 12 Draft 03 August 2015, available at: https://dvcs.w3.org/hg/ttml/raw-file/tip/ttml-ww-pro-files/ttml-ww-profiles.html
- 14 [65] W3C TTML Profile Registry, available at: https://www.w3.org/wiki/TTML/CodecsReg-istry
- 16 [66] ETSI TS 103 190-1 v1.2.1, "Digital Audio Compression (AC-4); Part 1: Channel based coding".
- 18 [67] ISO/IEC 23008-3:2015 Information technology -- High efficiency coding and media 19 delivery in heterogeneous environments -- Part 3: 3D audio with Amendment 1:2015 and 20 Amendment 2:2015
- 21 [68] IETF RFC 2818, "HTTP Over TLS", May 2000.
- 22 [69] IETF RFC 4337, "MIME Type Registration for MPEG-4", March 2006.

1. Introduction

- 3 This document defines DASH-IF's InterOperability Points (IOPs). The document includes IOPs
- 4 for only this version of the document. For earlier versions, please refer to version 1 [1] and version
- 5 2 [2] of this document. DASH-IF recommends to deprecate the IOPs in previous versions and
- 6 deploy using one of the IOPs and extensions in this document.
- As a historical note, the scope of the initial DASH-AVC/264 IOP, issued with version 1 of this
- 8 document [1] was the basic support high-quality video distribution over the top. Both live and on-
- 9 demand services are supported.
- 10 In the second version of this document [2], HD video (up to 1080p) extensions and several multi-
- 11 channel audio extensions are defined.
- 12 In this third version of the DASH-IF IOP document, two new DASH-264/AVC IOPs are defined.
- 13 Detailed refinements and improvements for DASH-IF live services and for ad insertion were added
- in these IOPs. One of these IOP is the superset of the simpler one. Additionally, two corresponding
- 15 IOPs are defined to also support HEVC [22]. In both cases, AVC and HEVC, the more advanced
- 16 IOD 11 11'4' 1 ... A DACIT 1' 44 ... A Cana Till v C, the more advanced
- 16 IOP adds additional requirements on the DASH client to support segment parsing to achieve en-
- 17 hancement of live services. This structuring separates the Media Profiles from DASH features.
- 18 This document defines the IOPs in Table 1 and Extensions in Table 2. The Implementation Guide-
- 19 line's version in which each IOP or Extension was added is also provided in the tables.
- Note that all version 1 IOPs are also defined in version 2 and therefore referencing version [2] is sufficient.

22 23

Table 1 DASH-IF Interoperability Points

Interoperability Point	Identifier	Ver-	Refer-
		sion	ence
DASH-AVC/264	http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264	1.0	[2], 6.3
DASH-AVC/264 SD	http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264#sd	1.0	[2], 7.3
DASH-AVC/264 HD	http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264#hd	2.0	[2], 8.3
DASH-AVC/264 main	http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264main	3.0	8.2
DASH-AVC/264 high	http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264high	3.0	8.3
DASH-IF IOP simple	http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash-if-simple	3.0	8.4
DASH-IF IOP main	http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash-if-main	3.0	8.5

2425

Note that all extensions defined in version 2 of this document are carried over into version 3 without any modifications. In order to maintain a single document, referencing in Table 2 is restricted to this document.

Table 2 DASH-IF Interoperability Point Extensions

Extension	Identifier	Ver sio n	Section
DASH-IF multichannel audio	http://dashif.org/guidelines/dashif#ec-	2.0	9.4.2.3
extension with Enhanced AC-3	3		
DASH-IF multichannel exten-	http://dashif.org/guide-	2.0	9.4.2.3
sion with Dolby TrueHD	lines/dashif#mlpa		

6

7

8

1 2

Test cases and test vectors for DASH-AVC/264 IOPs are provided in [34]. The conformance and reference software for DASH-IF IOPs is provided in [35] (based on the MPEG conformance software [6]). DASH Identifiers for different categories can be found online [36].

In addition to the Interoperability points in Table 1 and extensions in Table 2, this document also defines several other identifiers for functional purposes as documented in Table 3.

Table 3 Identifiers defined in this Document

Identifier	Semantics	Type	Section
http://dashif.org/identifiers/vast30	Defines an event for signalling events of VAST3.0	Event	5.6
http://dashif.org/guidelines/trickmode	Defines a trick mode Adaptation Set.	Functionality	3.2.9
http://dashif.org/guidelines/Adapta- tionSetSwitching	Defines a method to signal that switching across Adaptation Sets is possible.	Functionality	3.8

10 11

12

13 14 Note that all identifiers are collected at and http://dashif.org/identifiers/ and external identifiers are encouraged to be submitted for documentation there as well. Note also that DASH-IF typically tries to avoid defining identifiers. Identifiers in *italics* are subject to discussion with other organizations and may be deprecated in a later version.

2. Context and Conventions

1

24

25

2627

28

29

30 31

32

35

39

2 **2.1.** Relation to MPEG-DASH and other DASH specifications

- 3 Dynamic Adaptive Streaming over HTTP (DASH) is initially defined in the first edition of
- 4 ISO/IEC 23009-1 which was published in April 2012 and some corrections were done in 2013 [1].
- 5 In May 2014, ISO/IEC published the second version of ISO/IEC 23009-1 [5] that includes addi-
- 6 tional features and provide additional clarifications. The initial two versions of this document
- 7 where based on the first edition of ISO/IEC 23009-1. This version is based on the second edition
- 8 of ISO/IEC 23009-1, i.e. ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014 including Cor.2 and Amd.2 [5]. This means that
- 9 also for all interoperability points that were initially defined in earlier versions of the document,
- also now the second edition serves as the reference. Backward-compatibility across different edi-
- 11 tion is handled by MPEG-DASH in ISO/IEC 23009-1 [5]. Note that this document also refers to
- 12 technologies in draft corrigenda and draft amendments of MPEG. For this version, in particular
- 13 Draft Amd.3 of ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014, Draft Amd.4 of ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014, and Draft Cor.3
- 14 of ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014 are of relevance.
- 15 This document was generated in close coordination with DVB-DASH [45]. The tools and features
- are aligned to the extent considered reasonable. To support implementers, this document attempts
- 17 to highlight any differences and/or further restrictions or extensions when compared to DVB-
- 18 DASH. However, as a disclaimer, this coverage is not considered complete.

19 **2.2.** Compatibility and Extensions to Earlier Versions

20 **2.2.1.** Summary of Version 3 Modifications

- Version 3 of this document applies the following modifications compared to version 2 [2]:
- Reference to the second edition of ISO/IEC 23009-1 including amendment 1 and cor.1 [4], as well as Well as Amendment 3 [5].
 - Add an explicit statement in DASH-264/AVC to forbid time code wrap around
 - Definition on the usage of key words in section 2.3.
 - Add more constraints on the usage of Trick Modes for improved interoperability in section 3.2.9.
 - Add more constraints on the Representations in one Adaptation Set in section 3.2.10, especially for the case when the bitstream switching is true.
 - Add additional details on the usage of HTTP in section 3.4.
 - Add H.265/HEVC as a codec and create IOPs for inclusion of this codec.
 - Add CEA-608/708 closed captioning in SEI messages in section 6.4.3.
- Detailed description of simple and main live operation, with the latter including segment parsing in section 4.
 - Detailed description of server-based and app-based ad insertion in section 5
- General editorial updates and clarifications
- Updates and clarification to section 7 on DRM and common encryption.
- Update to references
 - Relaxation of the audio encoding requirements in section 6.3.2.
- Add clarification on the usage of the minimum buffer time and bandwidth in section 3.2.8.
- Add an informative section on the timing model of DASH in section 3.2.7.

- Relax the use of the 'lmsg' brand for signaling the last segment in section 3.6.
 - Simplification of the codecs table.

2

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11 12

13

14 15

16

17

18

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

30

31 32

33 34

35

36 37

40

- 3 Version 3.1 of this document applies the following modifications compared to version 3
 - Further updates to references
 - Several editorial corrections and clarifications
 - Obsolete reference to RFC2616 and refer to the new set of RFCs for HTTP/1.1
 - A section is added on how to operate with transforming proxies and other adaptation middle-boxes in section 3.4.4.
 - Considerations on how to operate at the live edge for a live service
 - The addition of the availability time offset to the description of the live service.
 - The explicit exclusion of on-request based xlink for dynamic services.
 - Clarifications of HEVC signaling for DASH in Table 18 based on feedback from MPEG.
 - Clarify relation between SMPTE-TT and IMSC1 in section 6.4.2 and 6.4.4.
 - Add extension for audio codec AC-4.
 - Version 3.2 of this document applies the following modifications compared to version 3.1
 - Further updates to references.
 - Several editorial corrections and clarifications.
 - Small clarification updates on the timing model in section 3.2.7.
- Added support for switching across Adaptation Sets, in particular for H.264/AVC and H.265/HEVC switching in section 3.8.
 - Added a clarification on the value of @audioSamplingRate for AAC SBR in section 6.3.2.
 - Added a section on the use of HTTPS with DASH in section 7.2.
 - Moved the test DRM to the test vector document 7.
 - Added support for key rotation in section 7.
 - Add extension for MPEG-H audio in section 9.
 - Version 3.3 of this document applies the following modifications compared to version 3.2
 - Identifiers are summarized in the Introduction 1.
- References are updated
 - Several editorial corrections and clarifications are applied
 - Guidelines and permitted attributes when converting a live service to on-demand are documented, for details see section 4.6.2.
 - Added clarification on the format of remote elements in alignment with DCOR.3 of ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014 [7].
 - Addressed the differentiation of different content types through mime types, codecs and Roles rather than the use @contentType. See section 3.2.13 for more details.
 - Added guidelines on how to use clear keys in the context of DASH, see section 7.7.
- Provided guidelines on the timing model when using side-car subtitle files in DASH, see section 6.4.4.
 - Update period continuity to align with ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014/Amd.3 [5].
- Update the callback event to align with ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014/Amd.3 [5].
- Update the MPD anchors to align with ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014/Amd.3 [5].
 - Take into account the updated in ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014/DCOR.3 [7].

2.2.2. Backward-Compatibility Considerations

- 2 Generally, content can be offered such that it can be consumed by version 2 and version 3 clients.
- 3 In such a case the restricted authoring should be used and it should be accepted that version 2
- 4 clients may ignore certain Representations and Adaptation Sets. Content Authors may also con-
- 5 sider the publication of two MPDs, but use the same segment formats.
- 6 In terms of compatibility between version 2 and version 3, the following should be considered:
 - The backward-compatibility across MPEG editions is handled in the second edition of ISO/IEC 23009-1 [5].
 - General clarifications and updates are added
 - Further restrictions on content authoring compared to version 2 are:
 - o forbid time code wrap around
 - o the usage of DRM, especially the Content Protection element
- o constraints on trick mode usage
 - o additional constraints on the usage of HTTP
 - Adaptation Set constraints
 - Relaxations are:
 - o Permit usage of additional subtitling format based on CEA-608/708
 - o the audio encoding requirements for HE-AACv2
 - o permit to not use of the 'lmsg' brand for signaling the last segment
 - o the ability to signal bitstream switching set to true
 - o the use of remote elements with Xlink

21 22

33

34

35

36

37

38 39

40

41

1

7

8

9

10 11

12

14

15

16 17

18

19

20

23 **2.3.** Use of Key Words

24 **2.3.1. Background**

- 25 DASH-IF generally does not write specifications, but provides and documents guidelines for im-
- 26 plementers to refer to interoperability descriptions. In doing so, the DASH-IF agreed to use key
- words in order to support readers of the DASH-IF documents to understand better how to interpret
- 28 the language. The usage of key words in this document is provided below.

29 **2.3.2. Key Words**

- The key word usage is aligned with the definitions in RFC 2119 [47], namely:
- SHALL: This word means that the definition is an absolute requirement of the specification.
 - SHALL NOT: This phrase means that the definition is an absolute prohibition of the specification.
 - SHOULD: This word means that there may exist valid reasons in particular circumstances to ignore a particular item, but the full implications must be understood and carefully weighed before choosing a different course.
 - SHOULD NOT: This phrase means that there may exist valid reasons in particular circumstances when the particular behavior is acceptable or even useful, but the full implications should be understood and the case carefully weighed before implementing any behavior described with this label.

- MAY: This word means that an item is truly optional. One vendor may choose to include the item because a particular marketplace requires it or because the vendor feels that it enhances the product while another vendor may omit the same item.
- 4 These key words are attempted to be used consistently in this document, but only in small letters.

2.3.3. Mapping to DASH-IF Assets

- 6 If an IOP document associates such a key word from above to a content authoring statement then 7 the following applies:
 - SHALL: The conformance software provides a conformance check for this and issues an *error* if the conformance is not fulfilled.
 - SHALL NOT: The conformance software provides a conformance check for this and issues an *error* if the conformance is not fulfilled.
 - SHOULD: The conformance software provides a conformance check for this and issues a *warning* if the conformance is not fulfilled.
 - SHOULD NOT: The conformance software provides a conformance check for this and issues a *warning* if the conformance is not fulfilled.
 - SHOULD and MAY: If present, the feature check of the conformance software documents a feature of the content.
 - If an IOP document associates such a key word from above to a DASH Client then the following applies:
 - SHALL: Test content is necessarily provided with this rule and the reference client implements the feature.
 - SHALL NOT: The reference client does not implement the feature.
 - SHOULD: Test content is provided with this rule and the reference client implements the feature unless there is a justification for not implementing this.
 - SHOULD NOT: The reference client does not implement the feature unless there is a justification for implementing this.
 - MAY: Test content is provided and the reference client implements the feature if there is a justification this.

2.4. Definition and Usage of Interoperability Points

30 **2.4.1. Profile Definition in ISO/IEC 23009-1**

- 31 MPEG DASH defines formats for MPDs and Segments. In addition MPEG provides the ability to
- further restrict the applied formats by the definition of *Profiles* as defined on section 8 of ISO/IEC
- 23009-1 [5]. Profiles of DASH are defined to enable interoperability and the signaling of the use
- 34 of features.

1

2

3

5

8

9

10

11

12

13 14

15

16 17

18

19

20

21

2223

24

25

26

2728

- 35 Such a profile can also be understood as permission for DASH clients that implement the features
- required by the profile to process the Media Presentation (MPD document and Segments).
- Furthermore, ISO/IEC 23009-1 permits external organizations or individuals to define restrictions.
- 38 permissions and extensions by using this profile mechanism. It is recommended that such external
- definitions be not referred to as profiles, but as *Interoperability Points*. Such an interoperability
- 40 point may be signalled in the @profiles parameter once a URI is defined. The owner of the
- 41 URI is responsible to provide sufficient semantics on the restrictions and permission of this in-
- 42 teroperability point.

This document makes use of this feature and provides a set of Interoperability Points. Therefore, based on the interoperability point definition, this document may be understood in two ways:

- a collection of content conforming points, i.e. as long as the content conforms to the restrictions as specified by the IOP, clients implementing the features can consume the content.
- a client capability points that enable content and service providers for flexible service provisioning to clients conforming to these client capabilities.

This document provides explicit requirements, recommendations and guidelines for content authoring that claims conformance to a profile (by adding the @profiles attribute to the MPD) as well as for clients that are permitted to consume a media presentation that contains such a profile.

2.4.2. Usage of Profiles

1 2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

16

17

18

19

20

2122

23

24

25

2627

28

29

30

31

32

33

34

35

- 12 A Media Presentation may conform to one or multiple profiles/interoperability points and con-
- forms to each of the profiles indicated in the MPD@profiles attribute is specified as follows:
- When ProfA is included in the MPD@profiles attribute, the MPD is modified into a profile-
- specific MPD for profile conformance checking using the following ordered steps:
 - 1. The MPD@profiles attribute of the profile-specific MPD contains only ProfA.
 - 2. An **AdaptationSet** element for which @profiles does not or is not inferred to include ProfA is removed from the profile-specific MPD.
 - 3. A Representation element for which @profiles does not or is not inferred to include ProfA is removed from the profile-specific MPD.
 - 4. All elements or attributes that are either (i) in this Part of ISO/IEC 23009 and explicitly excluded by ProfA, or (ii) in an extension namespace and not explicitly included by ProfA, are removed from the profile-specific MPD.
 - 5. All elements and attributes that "may be ignored" according to the specification of ProfA are removed from the profile-specific MPD.
 - An MPD is conforming to profile ProfA when it satisfies the following:
 - 1. ProfA is included in the MPD@profiles attribute.
 - 2. The profile-specific MPD for ProfA conforms to ISO/IEC 23009-1
 - 3. The profile-specific MPD for ProfA conforms to the restrictions specified for ProfA.
 - A Media Presentation is conforming to profile ProfA when it satisfies the following:
 - 1. The MPD of the Media Presentation is conforming to profile ProfA as specified above.
 - 2. There is at least one Representation in each Period in the profile-specific MPD for ProfA.
 - 3. The Segments of the Representations of the profile-specific MPD for ProfA conform to the restrictions specified for ProfA.

2.4.3. Interoperability Points and Extensions

- 36 This document defines Interoperability Points and Extensions. Both concepts make use of the pro-
- 37 file functionality of ISO/IEC 23009-1.
- 38 Interoperability Points provide a basic collection of tools and features to ensure that content/service
- 39 providers and client vendors can rely to support a sufficiently good audio-visual experience. Ex-
- 40 tensions enable content/service providers and client vendors to enhance the audio-visual experi-
- 41 ence provided by an Interoperability Point in a conforming manner.

- 1 The only difference between Interoperability Points and Extensions is that Interoperability Points
- 2 define a full audio-visual experience and Extensions enhance the audio-visual experience in typi-
- 3 cally only one dimension.
- 4 Examples for the usage of the @profiles signaling are provided in Annex A of this document.

5 3. DASH-Related Aspects

6 **3.1. Scope**

13

14

15

16

- 7 DASH-IF Interoperability Points use ISO base media file format [10] based encapsulation and
- 8 provide significant commonality with a superset of the ISO BMFF On-Demand, the ISO BMFF
- 9 Live profile, and the ISO BMFF Common Profile as defined in ISO/IEC 23009-1 [4], sections 8.3,
- 8.4 and 8.10, respectively. DASH-IF IOPs are intended to provide support for on-demand and live content. The primary constraints imposed by this profile are the requirement that each Represen-
- tation is provided in one of the following two ways
 - as a single Segment, where Subsegments are aligned across Representations within an Adaptation Set. This permits scalable and efficient use of HTTP servers and simplifies seamless switching. This is mainly for on-demand use cases.
 - as a sequence of Segments where each Segment is addressable by a template-generated URL. Content generated in this way is mainly suitable for dynamic and live services.
- URL. Content generated in this way is mainly suitable for dynamic and live services.

 In both cases (Sub)Segments begin with Stream Access Points (SAPs) of type 1 or 2 [10], i.e.
- 19 regular IDR frames in case of video. In addition, (Sub)Segments are constrained so that for switch-
- 20 ing video Representations within one Adaptation Set the boundaries are aligned without gaps or
- 21 overlaps in the media data. Furthermore, switching is possible by a DASH client that downloads,
- decodes and presents the media stream of the come-from Representation and then switches to the
- 23 go-to Representation by downloading, decoding and presenting the new media stream. No overlap
- 24 in downloading, decoding and presentation is required for seamless switching of Representations
- in one Adaptation Set.
- Additional constraints are documented for bitstream switching set to true as well as special case
- such as trick modes, etc.

28 **3.2. DASH Formats**

29 **3.2.1.** Introduction

- 30 This section introduces the detailed constraints of the MPD and the DASH segments in a descrip-
- 31 tive way referring to ISO/IEC 23009-1 [4]. The DASH-based restrictions have significant com-
- 32 monality with the ISO BMFF Live and On-Demand profiles from the MPEG-DASH specification.
- 33 Specifically:

34

35 36

37

38

- Segment formats are based on ISO BMFF with fragmented movie files, i.e. (Sub)Segments
 are encoded as movie fragments containing a track fragment as defined in ISO/IEC 1449612 [10], plus the following constraints to make each movie fragment independently decodable:
 - Default parameters and flags shall be stored in movie fragments ('tfhd' or 'trun' box) and not track headers ('trex' box)

- The 'moof' boxes shall not use external data references, the flag 'default-base-is-moof' shall also be set (aka movie-fragment relative addressing) and data-offset shall be used, i.e. base-data-offset-present shall not be used (follows ISO/IEC 23009-1 [4]).
 - Alignment with ISO BMFF Live & On-Demand Profiles, i.e. within each Adaptation Set the following applies
 - Fragmented movie files are used for encapsulation of media data
 - (Sub)Segments are aligned to enable seamless switching

Beyond the constraints provided in the ISO BMFF profiles, the following additional restrictions are applied.

- IDR-like SAPs (i.e., SAPs type 2 or below) at the start of each (Sub)Segment for simple switching.
- Segments should have almost equal duration. The maximum tolerance of segment duration shall be ±50% and the maximum accumulated deviation over multiple segments shall be ±50% of the signaled segment duration (i.e. the @duration). Such fluctuations in actual segment duration may be caused by for example ad replacement or specific IDR frame placement. Note that the last segment in a Representation may be shorter according to ISO/IEC 23009-1 [4].

Note 1: If accurate seeking to specific time is required and at the same time a fast response is required one may use On-Demand profile for VoD or the **Seg-mentTimeline** based addressing. Otherwise the offset in segment duration compared to the actual media segment duration may result in a less accurate seek position for the download request, resulting in some increased initial start-up.

Note 2: The maximum tolerance of segment duration is also addressed in ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014/Cor.3 [7] and once approved, a reference to the specification may replace the above text.

- If the **SegmentTimeline** element is used for the signaling of the Segment duration, the timing in the segment timeline shall be media time accurate and no constraints on segment duration deviation are added except the maximum segment duration as specified in the MPD. However, despite the usage of the the **SegmentTimeline**, it is not encouraged to use varying Segment durations. The **SegmentTimeline** element should only be used in order to signal occasional shorter Segments (possibly caused by encoder processes) or to signal gaps in the time line.
- only non-multiplexed Representations shall be used, i.e. each Representation only contains a single media component.
- Addressing schemes are restricted to
 - templates with number-based addressing
 - templates with time-based addressing
 - Subsegments with Segment Index. In this case either the @indexRange attribute shall be present or the **RepresentationIndex** element shall be present. Only a single sidx box shall be present.

Note 1: the external Representation Index was only added in the second edition [4]. If compatibility to v2.0 or earlier of this document is necessary, the external Representation Index shall not be used.

Note 2: The latter restriction was introduced in version 3 of this document based on 2 deployment experience and to enable alignment with DVB DASH.

- In case multiple Video Adaptation Sets as defined in 3.2.13 are offered, exactly one video Adaptation Set shall be signaled as the main one unless different Adaptation Sets contain the same content with different quality or different codecs. In the latter case, all Adaptation Sets with the same content shall be signaled as the main content. Signaling as main content using the Role by descriptor with @schemeIdUri=" urn:mpeg:dash:role:2011 and @value="main".
- The content offering shall adhere to the presence rules of certain elements and attributes as defined section 3 2 4

11 It is expected that a client conforming to such a profile is able to process content offered under these constraints. More details on client procedures are provided in section 3.3. 12

3.2.2. Media Presentation Description constraints for v1 & v2 Clients

3.2.2.1. Definition according to ISO/IEC 23009-1

1

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

13 14

17

18 19

20

21

22 23

24

36

15 This section follows a description according to ISO/IEC 23009-1. In section 3.2.2.2, a restricted content offering is provided that provides a conforming offering. 16

> NOTE: The term "ignored" in the following description means, that if an MPD is provided and a client that complies with this interoperability point removes the element that may be ignored, then the MPD is still complying with the constraints of the MPD and segments as defined in ISO/IEC 23001-9, section 7.3.

The MPD shall conform to the ISO Base Media File Format Common profile as defined on ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014/Amd.1:2015 [4], section 8.9, except for the following issues:

- Representations with @mimeType attribute application/xml+ttml shall not be ignored.
- 25 In addition, the Media Presentation Description shall conform to the following constraints:
- Representation elements with a @subseqmentStartsWithSAP value set to 3 26 27 may be ignored.
- 28 — **Representation** elements with a @startsWithSAP value set to 3 may be ignored.
- 29 — If a Period contains multiple Video Adaptation Sets as defined in 3.2.13 then at least one 30 Adaptation Set shall contain Role element a <Role dUri="urn:mpeq:dash:role:2011" value="main"> and each Adaptation Set 31 32 containing such a **Role** element shall provide perceptually equivalent media streams.

3.2.2.2. 33 **Simple Restricted Content Offering**

- 34 A conforming MPD offering based on the ISO BMFF Live Profile shall contain
- 35 • MPD@type set to static or set to dynamic.
 - MPD@profiles includes urn:mpeq:dash:profile:isoff-live:2011
- 37 • One or multiple Periods with each containing one or multiple Adaptation Sets and with 38 each containing one or multiple Representations.

- The Representations contain or inherit a **SegmentTemplate** with \$Number\$ or \$Time\$ Identifier.
 - @segmentAlignment set to true for all Adaptation Sets

7

8

9

1

2

- 5 A conforming MPD offering based on the ISO BMFF On-Demand Profile shall contain
- **MPD**@type set to static.
 - MPD@profiles includes urn:mpeq:dash:profile:isoff-ondemand:2011
 - One or multiple Periods with each containing one or multiple Adaptation Sets and with each containing one or multiple Representations.
 - @subSegmentAlignment set to true for all Adaptation Sets

10 11

29

33

34

35

12 **3.2.3.** Segment format constraints

- Representations and Segments referred to by the Representations in the profile-specific MPD for
- this profile, the following constraints shall be met:
- Representations shall comply with the formats defined in ISO/IEC 23009-1, section 7.3.
- In Media Segments, all Segment Index ('sidx') and Subsegment Index ('ssix') boxes, if present, shall be placed before any Movie Fragment ('moof') boxes.
- Note: DVB DASH [45] permits only one single Segment Index box ('sidx') for the entire Segment. As this constraints is not severe in the content offering, it is strongly recommended to offer content following this constraint.
- 20 If the MPD@type is equal to "static" and the MPD@profiles attribute includes 21 "urn:mpeq:dash:profile:isoff-on-demand:2011", then
- Each Representation shall have one Segment that complies with the Indexed Self-Initializing Media Segment as defined in section 6.3.5.2 in ISO/IEC 23009-1.
- Time Codes expressing presentation and decode times shall be linearly increasing with increasing Segment number in one Representation. In order to minimize the frequency of time code wrap around 64 bit codes may be used or the timescale of the Representation may be chosen as small as possible. In order to support time code wrap around, a new Period may be added in the MPD added that initiates a new Period in order to express a discontinuity.

3.2.4. Presence of Attributes and Elements

- 30 Elements and attributes are expected to be present for certain Adaptation Sets and Representations
- 31 to enable suitable initial selection and switching.
- 32 Specifically the following applies:
 - For any Video Adaptation Sets as defined in 3.2.13 the following attributes shall be present
 - o @maxWidth (or @width if all Representations have the same width)
 - o @maxHeight (or @height if all Representations have the same height)

- 1 o @maxFrameRate (or @frameRate if all Representations have the same frame rate)
- o @par

5

6 7

8

10

11

15

16

17

18

19

20

2122

23

Note: The attributes @maxWidth and @maxHeight should be used such that they describe the target display size. This means that they may exceed the actual largest size of any coded Representation in one Adaptation Set.

- For any Representation within an Video Adaptation Sets as defined in 3.2.13 the following attributes shall be present:
 - o @width, if not present in AdaptationSet element
 - o @height, if not present in AdaptationSet element
 - o @frameRate, if not present in AdaptationSet element
- 12 o @sar

Note: @width, @height, and @sar attributes should indicate the vertical and horizontal sample count of encoded and cropped video samples, not the intended display size in pixels.

- For Adaptation Set or for any Representation within an Video Adaptation Sets as defined in 3.2.13 the attribute @scanType shall either not be present or shall be set to "progressive".
- For any Audio Adaptation Sets as defined in 3.2.13 the following attributes shall be present o @lang
- For any Representation within an Audio Adaptation Sets as defined in 3.2.13 the following elements and attributes shall be present:
 - o @audioSamplingRate, if not present in AdaptationSet element
 - AudioChannelConfiguration, if not present in AdaptationSet element

24 **3.2.5. MPD Dimension Constraints**

- No constraints are defined on MPD size, or on the number of elements. However, it should be avoided to create unnecessary large MPDs.
- Note: DVB DASH [45] adds MPD dimension constraints in section 4.5 of their specification. In order to conform to this specification, it is recommended to obey these constraints.

29 **3.2.6.** Generic Metadata

- 30 Generic metadata may be added to MPDs based on DASH. For this purpose, the Essential Property
- 31 Descriptor and the Supplemental Property Descriptor as defined in ISO/IEC 23009-1 [4], clause
- 32 5.8.4.7 and 5.8.4.8.
- 33 Metadata identifiers for content properties are provided here: http://dashif.org/iden-
- 34 tifiers.
- 35 However, it is not expected that DASH-IF clients support all metadata at
- 36 http://dashif.org/identifiers unless explicitly required.

3.2.7. DASH Timing Model

2 **3.2.7.1.** General

1

- 3 According to ISO/IEC 23009-1, DASH defines different timelines. One of the key features in
- 4 DASH is that encoded versions of different media content components share a common timeline.
- 5 The presentation time of each access unit within the media content is mapped to the global com-
- 6 mon presentation timeline for synchronization of different media components and to enable seam-
- 7 less switching of different coded versions of the same media components. This timeline is referred
- 8 as Media Presentation timeline. The Media Segments themselves contain accurate Media Presen-
- 9 tation timing information enabling synchronization of components and seamless switching.
- A second timeline is used to signal to clients the availability time of Segments at the specified
- 11 HTTP-URLs. These times are referred to as **Segment availability times** and are provided in wall-
- 12 clock time. Clients typically compare the wall-clock time to Segment availability times before
- accessing the Segments at the specified HTTP-URLs in order to avoid erroneous HTTP request
- responses. For static Media Presentations, the availability times of all Segments are identical. For
- dynamic Media Presentations, the availability times of segments depend on the position of the
- Segment in the Media Presentation timeline, i.e. the Segments get available and unavailable over
- 17 time.

22

23

24

25

26

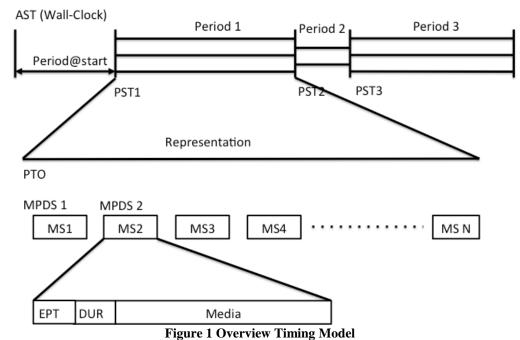
27

28 29

30

- Figure 1 provides an overview of the different timelines in DASH and their relation. The diagram
- shows three Periods, each of the Periods contains multiple Representations (for the discussion it is
- irrelevant whether these are included in the same Adaptation Set or in different ones).
- 21 Specifically, the following information is available in the MPD that relates to timing:
 - MPD@availabilityStartTime: the start time is the anchor for the MPD in wall-clock time. The value is denoted as *AST*.
 - **Period**@start: the start time of the Period relative to the MPD availability start time. The value is denoted as *PS*.
 - Representation@presentationTimeOffset: the presentation time offset of the Representation in the Period, i.e. it provides the media time of the Representation that is supposed to be rendered at the start of the Period. Note that typically this time is either earliest presentation time of the first segment or a value slightly larger in order to ensure synchronization of different media components. If larger, this Representation is presented with short delay with respect to the Period start.
- 32 In addition, with the use of the Representation@duration or Representation. Seg-
- 33 mentTimeline the MPD start time for each segment and the MPD duration for each segment
- can be derived. For details refer to ISO/IEC 23009-1 as well as section 4.
- 35 According to Figure 1, the AST is a wall-clock time. It provides an anchor to all wall-clock time
- 36 computation in the MPD. The sum of the **Period**@start of the first Period and the AST provides
- 37 the Period start time *PST1* value in wall-clock time of the first Period.
- 38 The media timeline origin for tracks in ISO Media files is defined to be zero. Each Representation
- 39 is assigned a presentation time offset, either by the value of the attribute Representa-
- 40 **tion**@presentationTimeOffset or by default set to 0. The value of this attribute is de-
- 41 noted as PTO. It is normally the case that for complete files sequenced as Periods this value is 0.

For "partial" files or live streams, @presentationTimeOffset indicates the media composition/presentation time of the samples that synchronize to the start of the Period. @presentationTimeOffset for the live stream will usually not be zero because the encoders are usually started prior to presentation availability, so the media timestamps on the first available Segments will have increased since the encoders started. Encoding timestamps may be set to UTC (as though the encoder was turned on 1/1/1970 at midnight). Representations in Periods of live content typically have the same @presentationTimeOffset as long as the media is continuously encoded, because UTC time and media time increase at the same rate and maintain the same offset.



Within a Representation, each Segment is assigned an MPD start time and MPD duration according to ISO/IEC 23009-1 (more details for dynamic services are provided in section 4). These two values can be computed from the MPD and provide approximate times for each segment that are in particular useful for random access and seeking.

In addition, each segment has an internal sample-accurate presentation time. Therefore, each segment has a media internal earliest presentation time *EPT* and sample-accurate presentation duration *DUR*.

For each media segment in each Representation the MPD start time of the segment should approximately be *EPT - PTO*. Specifically, the MPD start time shall be in the range of *EPT - PTO -*0.5*DUR and *EPT - PTO + 0.5*DUR* according to the requirement stated above.

Each Period is treated independently. Details on processing at Period boundaries are provided in ISO/IEC 23009-1. One example is, that for time code wrap-around a new Period is expected to be added that restarts at presentation time 0.

The value of **Period**@start for an ad can be chosen to coincide with an insertion point in the live stream by setting **Period**@start to a presentation time duration equal to the UTC time difference between @availabilityStartTime and the scheduled encoding time of the insertion point in the live stream.

1 3.2.7.2. Static Media Presentations

- 2 For static media presentations, all Segments shall be available at time AST. This means that a
- 3 DASH client may use the information in the MPD in order to seek to approximate times.

4 3.2.7.3. Dynamic Media Presentations

- 5 For dynamic media presentations, segments get available over time. The latest time they shall be
- 6 available is at the sum of PST (which is AST + Period@start), MPD start time and MPD
- 7 duration. The latter is added in order to take into account that at the server a segment typically
- 8 needs to be completed prior to its availability. For details refer to section 4.

9 **3.2.8. Bandwidth and Minimum Buffer Time**

The MPD contains a pair of values for a bandwidth and buffering description, namely the Minimum Buffer Time (MBT) expressed by the value of **MPD**@minBufferTime and bandwidth (BW) expressed by the value of **Representation**@bandwidth. The following holds:

- the value of the minimum buffer time does not provide any instructions to the client on how long to buffer the media. The value however describes how much buffer a client should have under *ideal* network conditions. As such, MBT is not describing the burstiness or jitter in the network, it is describing the burstiness or jitter in the **content encoding**. Together with the BW value, it is a property of the content. Using the "leaky bucket" model, it is the size of the bucket that makes BW true, given the way the content is encoded.
- The minimum buffer time provides information that for each Stream Access Point (and in the case of DASH-IF therefore each start of the Media Segment), the property of the stream: If the Representation (starting at any segment) is delivered over a constant bitrate channel with bitrate equal to value of the BW attribute then each presentation time PT is available at the client latest at time with a delay of at most PT + MBT.
- In the absence of any other guidance, **the** MBT **should be set** to the maximum GOP size (coded video sequence) of the content, which quite often is identical **to the maximum segment duration** for the live profile or the **maximum subsegment duration** for the On-Demand profile. The *MBT* may be set to a smaller value than maximum (sub)segment duration, but should not be set to a higher value.

In a simple and straightforward implementation, a DASH client decides downloading the next segment based on the following status information:

- the currently available buffer in the media pipeline, buffer
- the currently estimated download rate, *rate*
- the value of the attribute @minBufferTime, MBT
- the set of values of the @bandwidth attribute for each Representation i, BW[i]
- 35 The task of the client is to select a suitable Representation i.
- 36 The relevant issue is that starting from a SAP on, the DASH client can continue to playout the
- data. This means that at the current time it does have *buffer* data in the buffer. Based on this model
- 38 the client can download a Representation i for which $BW[i] \leq rate *buffer/MBT$ without emptying
- 39 the buffer.

10

11 12

13

14

15

16

17

18 19

20

21

2223

24

25

2627

28

29

30

31

32

33

- 40 Note that in this model, some idealizations typically do not hold in practice, such as constant bitrate
- 41 channel, progressive download and playout of Segments, no blocking and congestion of other
- 42 HTTP requests, etc. Therefore, a DASH client should use these values with care to compensate

- such practical circumstances; especially variations in download speed, latency, jitter, scheduling
- 2 of requests of media components, as well as to address other practical circumstances.
- 3 One example is if the DASH client operates on Segment granularity. As in this case, not only parts
- 4 of the Segment (i.e., MBT) needs to be downloaded, but the entire Segment, and if the MBT is
- 5 smaller than the Segment duration, then rather the segment duration needs to be used instead of
- 6 the MBT for the required buffer size and the download scheduling, i.e. download a Representation
- 7 *i* for which $BW[i] \leq rate*buffer/max segment duration.$

3.2.9. Trick Mode Support

8

17

18

19

20

21

22

2324

25

26

27

28

29

30

- 9 Trick Modes are used by DASH clients in order to support fast forward, seek, rewind and other
- operations in which typically the media, especially video, is displayed in a speed other than the
- 11 normal playout speed. In order to support such operations, it is recommended that the content
- 12 author adds Representations at lower frame rates in order to support faster playout with the same
- decoding and rendering capabilities.
- However, Representations targeted for trick modes are typically not be suitable for regular playout.
- 15 If the content author wants to explicitly signal that a Representation is only suitable for trick mode cases, but not for regular playout, it the following is recommended:
 - add an Adaptation Set that that only contains trick modes Representations
 - annotate the Adaptation Set with an EssentialProperty descriptor or SupplementalProperty descriptor with URL "http://dashif.org/guide-lines/trickmode" and the @value the value of @id attribute of the Adaptation Set to which these trick mode Representations belong. The trick mode Representations must be time-aligned with the Representations in the main Adaptation Set. The value may also be a white-space separated list of @id values. In this case the trick mode Adaptation Set is associated to all Adaptation Sets with the values of the @id.
 - signal the playout capabilities with the attribute @maxPlayoutRate for each Representation in order to indicate the accelerated playout that is enabled by the signaled codec profile and level.
 - If an Adaptation Set in annotated with the **EssentialProperty** descriptor with URI "http://dashif.org/guidelines/trickmode then the DASH client shall not select any of the contained Representations for regular playout.

31 **3.2.10.** Adaptation Set Constraints

32 **3.2.10.1.** Introduction

- 33 Content in one Adaptation Set is constrained to enable and simplify switching across different
- 34 Representations of the same source content. General Adaptation Set constraints allow sequencing
- of Media Segments from different Representations ("bitrate switching") prior to a single audio or
- video decoder, typically requiring the video decoder to be reset to new decoding parameters at the
- 37 switch point, such as a different encoded resolution or codec profile and level.
- 38 Bitstream Switching Adaptation Set constraints allow a switched sequence of Media Segments to
- 39 be decoded without resetting the decoder at switch points because the resulting Segment stream is
- a valid track of the source type, so the decoder is not even aware of the switch. In order to signal
- 41 that the Representations in an Adaptation Set are offered under these constraints, the attribute Ad-
- 42 aptationSet@bitstreamSwitching may be set to true. When Adaptation-

Set@bitstreamSwitching attribute is set to TRUE, the decoder can continue decoding without re-initialization. When @bitstreamSwitching is set to **FALSE**, seamless switching across Representations can be achieved with re-initialization of the decoder. Content authors should set **AdaptationSet**@bitstreamSwitching to **TRUE** only if the content does not need the decoder to be re-initialized.

5 6 7

8

1 2

3

4

In the following general requirements and recommendations are provided for content in an Adaptation Set in section 3.2.10.2 and specific requirements when the bitstream switching is set to true in section 3.2.10.3.

9 10 11

3.2.10.2. General

- 12 General Adaptation Set constraints require a client to process an Initialization Segment prior to the
- 13 first Media Segment and prior to each Media Segment selected from a different Representation (a
- "bitrate switch").
- 15 Adaptation Sets shall contain Media Segments compatible with a single decoder that start with
- 16 SAP type 1 or 2, and in time aligned Representations using the same @timescale, when multiple
- 17 Representations are present.
- 18 Edit lists in Initialization Segments intended to synchronize the presentation time of audio and
- video should be identical for all Representations in an Adaptation Set.
- 20 Note: Re-initialization of decoders, decryptors, and display processors on some clients during
- 21 bitrate switches may result in visible or audible artifacts. Other clients may evaluate the differences
- 22 between Initialization Segments to minimize decoder reconfiguration and maintain seamless
- 23 presentation equal to the encoded quality.
- 24 Additional recommendations and constraints may apply for encryption and media coding. For
- details, please check the relevant sections in this document, in particular section 6.2.5 and 7.7.5.

26 3.2.10.3. Bitstream Switching

- 27 A bitstream switching Adaptation Set is optimized for seamless decoding, and live streams that
- 28 may change encoding parameters over time. A bitstream switching Adaptation Set may process an
- 29 Initialization Segment one time from the highest bandwidth Representation in the Adaptation Set,
- and then process Media Segments from any other Representation in the same Adaptation Set with-
- 31 out processing another Initialization Segment. The resulting sequence of an Initialization Segment
- 32 followed by time sequenced Media Segments results in a valid ISO BMFF file with an elementary
- 33 stream similar to a transport stream.
 - For all Representations within an Adaptation Set with @bitstreamSwitching='true':
 - the Track ID shall be equal for all Representations
 - Each movie fragment shall contain one track fragment

Note: Multiple Adaptation Sets may be included in an MPD that contain different subsets of the available Representations that are optimized for different decoder and screen limitations. A Representation may be present in more than one Adaptation set, for example a 720p Representation that is present in a 720p Adaptation Set may also be present in a 1080p Adaptation Set. The 720p Representation uses the same Initialization Segments in each Adaptation Set, but the 1080p Adaptation Set would require decoder and display configuration with the 1080p Initialization Segment.

44

34

35

36

37

38

39

Additional recommendation and constraints may apply for encryption and media coding. For details, please see below.

3.2.11. Media Time Information of Segment

- The earliest presentation time may be estimated from the MPD using the segment availability start
- time minus the segment duration announced in the MPD.
 The earliest presentation time may be accurately determined from the
- 4 The earliest presentation time may be accurately determined from the Segment itself.
- 5 If the Segment Index is present than this time is provided in the earliest presenta-
- tion_time field of the Segment Index. To determine the presentation time in the Period, the value of the attribute @presentationTimeOffset needs to be deducted.
- 8 If the Segment Index is not present, then the earliest presentation time is deduced from the ISO
- 9 BMFF parameters, namely the movie fragment header and possibly in combination with the information in the Initialization Segment using the edit list.
- The earliest presentation time in the Period for a Segment can be deduced from the decode time
- taking also into account the composition time offset, edit lists as well as presentation time offsets.

 Specifically the following is the case to determine the earliest presentation time assuming that no
 - Specifically the following is the case to determine the earliest presentation time assuming that no edit list is present in the Initialization Segment:
 - If the SAP type is 1, then the earliest presentation time is identical to the sum of the decode time and the composition offset of the first sample. The decode time of the first sample is determined by the base media decode time of the movie fragment.
 - If the SAP type is 2, the first sample may not be the sample with the earliest presentation time. In order to determine the sample with the earliest presentation time, *this sample* is determined as the sample for which the sum of the decode time and the composition offset is the smallest within this Segment. Then the earliest presentation time of the Segment is the sum of the base media decode time and the sum of the decode time and the composition offset for *this sample*. Such an example is shown below.

In addition, if the presentation time needs to be adjusted at the beginning of a period, then the @presentationTimeOffset shall be used in order to set the presentation that is mapped to the start of the period. Content authoring shall be such that if edit lists are ignored, then the client can operate without timing and lip sync issues.

In the following examples, there is a sequence of I, P, and B frames, each with a decoding time delta of 10. The segmentation, presentation order and storage of the samples is shown in the table below. The samples are stored with the indicated values for their decoding time deltas and composition time offsets (the actual CT and DT are given for reference). The re-ordering occurs because the predicted P frames must be decoded before the bi-directionally predicted B frames. The value of DT for a sample is always the sum of the deltas of the preceding samples. Note that the total of the decoding deltas is the duration of the media in this track.

Example with closed GOP and SAP Type = 1:

Segment	/-							/-						\
	I1	P4	В2	В3	P7	В5	В6	18	P1	В9	В1	P1	В1	В13
Presenta- tion Order	== P14		B2	В3	Р4 В	5 B6	5 P7	==	I8	В9	В10	P11	B12	B13

Base media decode time	0								70						
Decode delta	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	
DT	0	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	10	11	12	130	
EPT	10						80								
Composition time offset	10	30	0	0	30	0	0	10	30	0	0	30	0	0	
CT	10	40	20	30	70	50	60	80	11	90	10	14	12	130	

Example with closed GOP and SAP Type = 2:

Segment	/					\	/-					\		
	13	P1	P2	Р6	В4	В5	I9	Р7	Р8	P12	В10	В11		
Presenta- tion Order	==	== P1 P2 I3 B4 B5 P6 == P7 P8 I9 B10 B11 P12 ==												
Base media decode time	0						60							
Decode Delta	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10		
DT	0	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	110		
EPT	10							70						
Composition time offset	30	0	0	30	0	0	30	0	0	30	0	0		
CT	30	10	20	60	40	50	90	70	80	120	100	110		

Example with closed GOP and SAP Type = 2 and negative composition offset:

Segment	/					\	/-					\	
	13	P1	P2	Р6	В4	В5	I9	Р7	Р8	P12	В10	B11	
Presenta- tion Order	==	== P1 P2 I3 B4 B5 P6 == P7 P8 I9 B10 B11 P12 ==											
Base media decode time	0							60					
Decode Delta	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	
DT	0	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	
EPT	0							60					
Composition offset	20	-10	-10	20	-10	-10	20	-10	-10	20	-10	-10	
CT	20	0	10	50	30	40	80	60	70	110	90	100	

For additional details refer to ISO/IEC 14496-12 [10] and ISO/IEC 23009-1 [1].

2 3

4

5

6

1

3.2.12. Content Offering with Periods

Content may be offered with a single Period. If content is offered with a single Period it is suitable to set PSTART to zero, i.e. the initialization segments get available at START on the server. However, other values for PSTART may be chosen.

7 8 9

Note: This is aligned with Amd.3 of ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014 [5] and may be referenced in a future version of this document.

10 11 12

13

14

15 16

17

18

19

20

34

35

36

37

38

39

40

- Content with multiple Periods may be created for different reasons, for example:
 - to enable splicing of content, for example for ad insertion,
 - to provide synchronization in segment numbering, e.g. compensate non-constant segment durations
 - to remove or add certain Representations in an Adaptation Set,
 - to remove or add certain Adaptation Sets,
 - to remove or add content offering on certain CDNs,
 - to enable signalling of shorter segments, if produced by the encoder.
- for robustness reasons as documented in detail in section 4.8.
- 21 Periods provide opportunities for resync, for ad insertion, for adding and removing Representa-
- 22 tions. However, in certain circumstances the content across Period boundaries is continuous and
- in this case, continuous playout of the client is expected.
- 24 In certain circumstances the Media Presentation is offered such that the next Period is a continua-
- 25 tion of the content in the previous Period, possibly in the immediately following Period or in a
- later Period (e.g after an advertisement Period had been inserted), in particular that certain media
- 27 components are continued.
- 28 The content provider may express that the media components contained in two Adaptation Sets in
- 29 two different Periods are associated by assigning equivalent Asset Identifiers to both Periods and
- 30 by identifying both Adaptation Sets with identical value for the attribute @id. Association ex-
- 31 presses a logical continuation of the media component in the next Period and may for example be
- 32 used by the client to continue playing an associated Adaptation Set in the new Period.
- In addition, two Adaptation Sets in one MPD are period-continuous if all of the following holds:
 - The Adaptation Sets are associated.
 - The sum of the value of the @presentationTimeOffset and the presentation duration of all Representations in one Adaptation Set are identical to the value of the @presentationTimeOffset of the associated Adaptation Set in the next Period.
 - If Representations in both Adaptation Sets have the same value for @id, then they shall have functionally equivalent Initialization Segments, i.e. the Initialization Segment may be used to continue the play-out of the Representation. The concatenation of the Initialization Segment of the first Period, if present, and all consecutive Media Segments in the

Representation in the first Period and subsequently the concatenation with all consecutive Media Segments in the Representation of the second Period shall represent a conforming Segment sequence as defined in 4.5.4 conforming to the media type as specified in the @mimeType attribute for the Representation in the first Period. Additionally, the @mimeType attribute for the Representation in the next Period shall be the same as one of the first Period.

Media Presentations should signal period-continuous Adaptation Sets by using a supplemental descriptor on Adaptation Set level with @schemeIdUri set to "urn:mpeg:dash:period-continuity:2015" with

- the @value of the descriptor matching the value of an @id of a Period that is contained in the MPD,
- the value of the **AdaptationSet**@id being the same in both Periods.
- MPD should signal period-continuous Adaptation Sets if the MPD contains Periods with identical
- 14 Asset Identifiers.

1

2

3

4

5

6 7

8 9

10

11

12

- 15 There exist special cases, for which the media in one Adaptation Set is a continuation of the pre-
- vious one, but the timestamps are not continuous. Examples are timestamp wrap around, encoder
- 17 reset, splicing, or other aspects. Two Adaptation Sets in one MPD are period-connected if all con-
- ditions from period-continuity from above hold, except that the timestamps across Period bound-
- aries may be non-continuous, but adjusted by the value of the @presentationTimeOffset
- at the Period boundary. However, for example the Initialization Segment is equivalent within the
- 21 two Adaptation Sets. Media Presentations should signal period-connected Adaptation Sets by us-
- 22 ing a supplemental descriptor on Adaptation Set level with @schemeIdUri set to
- "urn:mpeq:dash:period-connectivity:2015".
- Note that period continuity implies period connectivity.
- 25 For details on content offering with multiple Periods, please refer to the requirements and recom-
- 26 mendations in section 4 and 5.

27 3.2.13. Adaptation Set Media Type

- 28 In contrast to MPEG-DASH which does not prohibit the use of multiplexed Representations, in
- 29 the DASH-IF IOPs one Adaptation Set always contains exactly a single media type. The following
- 30 media types for Adaptation Sets are defined:
- Video Adaptation Set: An Adaptation Set that contains visual information for display to the user. Such an Adaptation Set is identified by @mimeType="video/mp4". For more details on the definition of media type video, refer to RFC 4337 [69]. The DASH-IF IOP restrict the usage of video/mp4 to only @codecs values as defined in this specification.
- Audio Adaptation Set: An Adaptation Set that contains sound information to be rendered to the user. Such an Adaptation Set is identified by @mimeType="audio/mp4". For more details on the definition of media type video, refer to RFC 4337 [69]. The DASH-IF IOP restrict the usage of audio/mp4 to only @codecs values as defined in this specification.

- 1 Subtitle Adaptation Set: An Adaptation Set that contains visual overlay information to be 2 rendered as auxiliary or accessibility information. Such an Adaptation Set is identified by 3 @mimeType="application/mp4", a Role descriptor with @schemeIdUri=" 4 urn:mpeg:dash:role:2011 and @value="subtitle" and an @codecs 5 parameter as defined in Table 4 or "application/ttml+xml".
 - Metadata Adaptation Set: An Adaptation Set that contains information that is not expected to be rendered by a specific media handler, but is interpreted by the application. Such an Adaptation Set is identified by @mimeType="application/mp4" and an appropriate sample entry identified by the @codecs parameter.
- 10 The media type is used by the DASH client in order to identify the appropriate handler for 11 rendering. Typically, the DASH client selects at most one Adaptation Set per media type. In
- 12 addition, the DASH client uses the string included in the @codecs parameter in order to identify
- 13 if the underlying media playback platform can play the media contained in the Representation.

3.3. **Client Implementation Requirements and Guidelines**

3.3.1. Overview 15

6

7

8

9

14

26

27

- 16 The DASH-related aspects of the interoperability point as defined in section 3.2 can also be un-
- 17 derstood as permission for DASH clients that only implement the features required by the descrip-
- 18 tion to process the Media Presentation (MPD document and Segments). The detailed DASH-re-
- 19 lated client operations are not specified. Therefore, it is also unspecified how a DASH client ex-
- 20 actly conforms. This document however provides guidelines on what is expected for conformance
- 21 to this interoperability point. A minimum set of requirements is collected in section 3.3.4.

22 3.3.2. **DASH Client Guidelines**

- 23 The DASH-related aspects in DASH-IF IOPs as well as for the ISO BMFF based On-Demand and
- 24 Live profiles of ISO/IEC 23009-1 are designed such that a client implementation can rely on rela-
- tively easy processes to provide an adaptive streaming service, namely: 25
 - selection of the appropriate Adaptation Sets based on descriptors and other attributes
 - initial selection of one Representation within each adaptation set
- 28 download of (Sub)Segments at the appropriate time
- synchronization of different media components from different Adaptation Sets 29
- 30 seamless switching of representations within one Adaptation Set

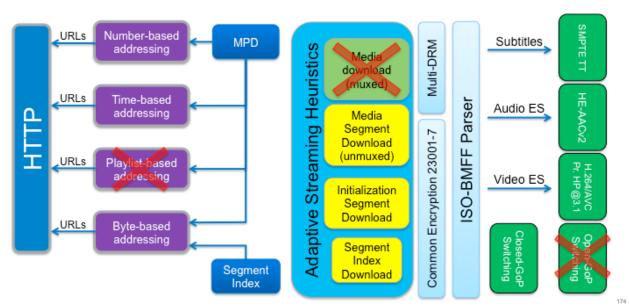


Figure 2 DASH aspects of a DASH-AVC/264 client compared to a client supporting the union of DASH ISO BMFF live and on-demand profile.

Figure 2 shows the DASH aspects of a DASH-AVC/264 client compared to a client supporting all features of the DASH ISO BMFF Live and On-Demand profile. The main supported features are:

- support of HTTP GET and partial GET requests to download Segments and Subsegments
- three different addressing schemes: number and time-based templating as well as byte range based requests.
- support of metadata as provided in the MPD and Segment Index
- download of Media Segments, Initialization Segments and Segment Index
- ISO BMFF parsing

- synchronized presentation of media components from different Adaptation Sets
- switching of video streams at closed GOP boundaries

3.3.3. Seamless switching

The formats defined in section 3.2 are designed for providing good user experience even in case the access bandwidth of the DASH Segment delivery or the cache varies. A key functionality is the ability that the DASH client can seamlessly switch across different Representations of the same media component. DASH clients should use the common timeline across different Representation representing the same media component to present one Representation up to a certain time t and continue presentation of another Representation from time t onwards. However, in practical implementations, this operation may be complex, as switching at time t may require parallel download and decoding of two Representations. Therefore, providing suitable switching opportunities in regular time intervals simplifies client implementations.

in regular time intervals simplifies client implementations.
 The formats defined in section 3.2 provide suitable switching opportunities at (sub)segment boundaries.

3.3.4. DASH Client Requirements

In order to ensure a minimum level of interoperability, a DASH-IF conforming client shall at least support the following features:

- The DASH client, if it switches, shall provide a seamless experience. A DASH shall be able to switch seamlessly at (sub)segment boundaries according to the definition in ISO/IEC 23009-1 [4], clause 4.5.1.
- If the scheme or the value for the following descriptor elements are not recognized and no equivalent other descriptor is present, the DASH client shall ignore the parent element:
 - o FramePacking
 - Rating
 - EssentialDescriptor
- ContentProtection

3.4. Transport and Protocol-Related Issues

11 **3.4.1.** General

- 12 Servers and clients operating in the context of the interoperability points defined in this document
- shall support the normative parts of HTTP/1.1 as defined in RFC 7230 [24], RFC 7231 [25], RFC
- 14 7232 [26], RFC 7233 [27], and RFC 7234 [28].
- 15 Specific requirements and recommendations are provided below.

Note: IETF recently obsoleted RFC 2616 and replaced it with the six RFCs referred above. The changes are generally text clarifications and in some cases, additional constraints to address security or interoperability issues. Each new RFC contains details of the changes compared to RFC2616. The IETF strongly recommends to reference and use the new RFCs

that collectively replace RFC2616. This version of DASH-IF IOP addresses this aspect.

20 21

33

16 17

18 19

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

MPEG-DASH explicitly permits the use of https as a scheme and hence, HTTP over TLS as a transport protocol as defined in RFC 2818 [68]. For more details refer to section 7.2.

24 **3.4.2.** Server Requirements and Guidelines

- 25 HTTP Servers serving segments should support suitable responses to byte range requests (partial GETs).
- 27 If an MPD is offered that contains Representations conforming to the ISO BMFF On-Demand
- 28 profile, then the HTTP servers offering these Representations shall support suitable responses to
- byte range requests (partial GETs).
- HTTP Servers may also support the syntax using Annex E of 23009-1 using the syntax of the second example in Annex E.3.
- 32 **BaseURL**@byteRange="\$base\$?\$query\$&range=\$first\$-\$last\$"

3.4.3. Client Requirements and Guidelines

- 34 Clients shall support byte range requests, i.e. issue partial GETs to subsegments as defined in RFC
- 7233 [27]. Range requests may also be issued by using Annex E of 23009-1 using the syntax of
- 36 the second example in Annex E.3,
- 37 **BaseURL**@byteRange="\$base\$?\$query\$&range=\$first\$-\$last\$"
- Clients shall follow the reaction to HTTP status and error codes as defined in section A.7 of ISO/IEC 23009-1.
- 40 Clients should support the normative aspects of the HTTP state management mechanisms (also
- 41 known as Cookies) as defined in RFC 6265 [44] for first-party cookies.

1 3.4.4. Transforming Proxies and Other Adaptation Middleboxes

- 2 A number of video transcoding proxies (aka "middleboxes") are already deployed on the wider
- 3 Internet may silently transcode Representations. Specifically: a middlebox may see a video/mp4
- 4 response, transcode that video into a different format (perhaps using a lower bitrate or a different
- 5 codec), then forward the transcoded video to the DASH client. This will break MPD and/or Seg-
- 6 ment Index based byte range operations, as those ranges are generally not valid in the transcoded video.
- If such a threat is possible, one of the following approaches may be considered in order to prevent proxies from transcoding DASH Representations:
 - 1. serve Media Presentations using encryption (e.g., HTTP over TLS, segment encryption or content protection),
 - 2. serve Representations with Cache-Control: "no-transform"
- 13 In all cases the operational impacts on caching and implementations should be considered when
- using any of the above technologies.
- 15 In order to prevent middleboxes to manipulate the MPD, e.g. removing certain Representations or
- Adaptation Sets, the MPD may be securely transported by appropriate means, e.g. HTTPS.

17 **3.5.** Synchronization Considerations

- In order to properly access MPDs and Segments that are available on DASH servers, DASH serv-
- 19 ers and clients should synchronize their clocks to a globally accurate time standard. Specifically it
- 20 is expected that the Segment Availability Times as computed from the MPD according to ISO/IEC
- 21 23009-1 [5], section 5.3.9.5 and additional details in ISO/IEC 23009-3 [9], section 6.4 are accurately announced in the MPD.
- 23 Options to obtain timing for a DASH client are for example:
 - Usage of NTP or SNTP as defined in RFC5905 [43].
 - The Date general-header field in the HTTP header (see RFC 7231 [25] section 7.1.1.2) represents the date and time at which the message was originated, and may be used as an indication of the actual time.
- 28 Anticipated inaccuracy of the timing source should be taken into account when requesting seg-
- 29 ments close to their segment availability time boundaries.
- 30 More details on advanced synchronization support is provided in section 4.7.

31 **3.6.** Considerations for Live Services

For interoperability aspects of live services, please refer to section 4.

33 3.7. Considerations on Ad Insertion

For interoperability aspects for ad insertion use cases, please refer to section 5.

36 3.8. Switching across Adaptation Sets

Note: This technology is expected to be available in ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014/Amd.4:2016 [6], section 5.3.3.5. Once published by MPEG, this section is expected to be replaced by a

reference to the MPEG-DASH standard.

39 40

35

10

11

12

24

25

26

- 1 Representations in two or more Adaptation Sets may provide the same content. In addition, the
- 2 content may be time-aligned and may be offered such that seamless switching across Representa-
- 3 tions in different Adaptation Sets is possible. Typical examples are the offering of the same content
- 4 with different codecs, for example H.264/AVC and H.265/HEVC and the content author wants to
- 5 provide such information to the receiver in order to seamlessly switch Representations (as defined
- 6 in ISO/IEC 23009-1, clause 4.5.1) across different Adaptation Sets. Such switching permission
- 7 may be used by advanced clients.
- 8 A content author may signal such seamless switching property across Adaptation Sets by providing
- 9 a Supplemental Descriptor along with an Adaptation Set with @schemeIdURI set to
- urn:mpeq:dash:adaptation-set-switching:2016 and the @value is a comma-
- separated list of Adaptation Set IDs that may be seamlessly switched to from this Adaptation Set.
- 12 If the content author signals the ability of Adaptation Set switching and as @segmentAlign-
- 13 ment or @subsegmentAlignment are set to TRUE for one Adaptation Set, the (Sub)Segment
- alignment shall hold for all Representations in all Adaptation Sets for which the @id value is
- included in the @value attribute of the Supplemental descriptor.
- As an example, a content author may signal that seamless switching across an H.264/AVC Adap-
- 17 tation Set with AdaptationSet@id="h264" and an HEVC Adaptation Set with Adapta-
- 18 tionSet@id="h265" is possible by adding a Supplemental Descriptor to the H.264/AVC Ad-
- 19 aptation Set with @schemeIdURI set to urn:mpeg:dash:adaptation-set-switch-
- 20 ing: 2016 and the @value="h265" and by adding a Supplemental Descriptor to the HEVC
- 21 Adaptation Set with @schemeIdURI set to urn:mpeg:dash:adaptation-set-
- 22 switching:2016 and the @value="h264".
- 23 In addition, if the content author signals the ability of Adaptation Set switching for
 - any Video Adaptation Set as defined in 3.2.13 then the parameters as defined in section 3.2.4 for an Adaption Set shall also hold for all Adaptation Sets that are included in the @value attribute.
 - any Audio Adaptation Set as defined in 3.2.13 then the parameters as defined in section 3.2.4 for an Adaption Set shall also hold for all Adaptation Sets that are included in the @value attribute.
- Note that this constraint may result that the switching may only be signaled with one Adaptation
- 31 Set, but not with both as for example one Adaptation Set signaling may include all spatial resolu-
- 32 tions of another one, whereas it is not the case the other way round.

4. Live Services

34 **4.1. Introduction**

24

25

26

27

28

29

- 35 MPEG-DASH [1] provides several tools to support live services. This section primarily provides
- requirements and recommendations for both, content authoring as well as client implementations.
- 37 For this purpose, this section

- clarifies and refines details of interoperability points when used with the features available
 in the 2012 edition of MPEG-DASH with respect to different service configurations and
 client implementations.
- defines one new interoperability point in order to address content authoring and client requirements to support a broad set of live services based on the features defined in the second edition (published 2014) of MPEG-DASH as well certain amendments thereof.
- The main features and differences of these two modes are provided in the following Table 5:

Feature	Simple	Main
Support of MPD@type	static, dynamic	static, dynamic
MPD updates	yes	yes
MPD updated triggered	by MPD attribute minimum update period	by Inband Event messages in the segments.
URL generation	based on MPD	based on MPD and segment information
Timeline gaps	based on MPD and for entire content	may be signalled individually for each Representation
Segments starts with	closed GOP	closed GOP
Support of Simple Live	Yes	No
Support of Main Live	Yes	Yes

10 To support the definition of the interoperability points, architectures and use cases were collected.

11 These are documented in Annex B.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

12

16

17

18

19

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

4.2. Overview Dynamic and Live Media Presentations

- DASH Media Presentations with MPD@type set to "dynamic" enable that media is made available over time and its availability may also be removed over time. This has two major effects, namely
 - 1. The content creator can announce a DASH Media Presentation for which not all content is yet available, but only gets available over time.
 - 2. Clients are forced into a timed schedule for the playout, such that they follow the schedule as desired by the content author.
- 20 Dynamic services may be used for different types of services:
 - 1. **Dynamic Distribution of Available Content**: Services, for which content is made available as dynamic content, but the content is entirely generated prior to distribution. In this case the details of the Media Presentation, especially the Segments (duration, URLs) are known and can be announced in a single MPD without MPD updates. This addresses use cases 2 and 3 in Annex B.
 - 2. **MPD-controlled Live Service**: Services for which the content is typically generated on the fly, and the MPD needs to be updated occasionally to reflect changes in the service

offerings. For such a service, the DASH client operates solely on information in the MPD. This addresses the use cases 4 and 5 in Annex B.

- 3. **MPD** and **Segment-controlled Live**: Services for which the content is typically generated on the fly, and the MPD may need to be updated on short notice to reflect changes in the service offerings. For such a service, the DASH client operates on information in the MPD and is expected to parse segments to extract relevant information for proper operation. This addresses the use cases 4 and 5, but also takes into account the advanced use cases.
- 9 Dynamic and Live services are typically controlled by different client transactions and server-side signaling.
 - For initial access to the service and joining the service, an MPD is required. MPDs may be accessed at join time or may have been provided earlier, for example along with an Electronic Service Guide. The initial MPD or join MPD is accessed and processed by the client and the client having an accurate clock that is synchronized with the server can analyze the MPD and extract suitable information in order to initiate the service. This includes, but is not limited to:
 - identifying the currently active Periods in the service and the Period that expresses the live edge (for more details see below)
 - selecting the suitable media components by selecting one or multiple Adaptation Sets.
 Within each Adaptation Set selecting an appropriate Representation and identifying the live edge segment in each Representations. The client then issues requests for the Segments.
 - The MPD may be updated on the server based on certain rules and clients consuming the service are expected to update MPDs based on certain triggers. The triggers may be provided by the MPD itself or by information included in Segments. Depending on the service offering, different client operations are required as shown in Figure 3.

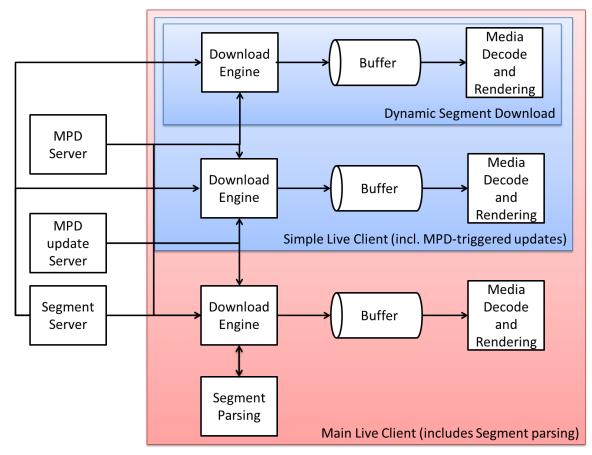


Figure 3 Different Client Models

The basic functions a live clients describes in this document are as follows:

- 1. **Dynamic Segment Download:** This function creates a list of available Segments based on a single MPD and joins the service by downloading Segments at the live edge or may use the Segments that are available in the time shift buffer.
- 2. Simple Live Client: This client includes the dynamic segment download function and enables updates of the MPD based on information in the MPD in order to extend the Segment list at the live edge. MPDs are refetched and revalidated when the currently available MPD expires, i.e. an expired MPD can no longer be used for Segment URL generation.
- 3. **Main Live Client**: This client includes all features of the simple Live DASH client. In addition it generates Segment URLs and it updates the MPD based on information in the

- 1 Segments if the service offering provides this feature. MPDs are refetched and revali-
- dated when the currently available MPD expires based on expiry information in the Seg-
- 3 ments.
- 4 Requirements and recommendations for the dynamic segment download functions are defined in
- 5 in section 4.3.
- 6 Requirements and recommendations for simple live service offerings and corresponding clients
- 7 are defined in section 4.4.
- 8 Requirements and recommendations for main live service offerings and corresponding clients are
- 9 defined in section 4.5.
- 10 Requirements and recommendations when offering live services as on-demand are provided in
- 11 section 4.6.
- 12 Requirements and recommendations for client-server timing synchronization are defined in sec-
- 13 tion 4.7.
- 14 Requirements and recommendations for robust service offerings and corresponding clients are
- defined in section 4.8.
- 16 Interoperability Aspects are defined in section 4.9.

17 **4.3. Dynamic Segment Download**

18 **4.3.1. Background and Assumptions**

- 19 The dynamic segment download function is a key component of live services, In addition, the
- 20 dynamic segment download function may also be used for scheduling a playout. In the remainder
- of this subsection, it is assumed that the client has access to a single instance of an MPD and all
- 22 information of the entire Media Presentation is contained in the MPD.
- We refer to this service as dynamic service as the main feature is that the Segments are made
- 24 available over time following the schedule of the media timeline.
- 25 Dynamic services are primarily documented in order to provide insight into the timing model of
- 26 Segment availabilities. This forms the basis for live services and explains the key concepts and
- 27 rules for Segment availabilities.

28 **4.3.2.** Preliminaries

29 **4.3.2.1. MPD** Information

- 30 If the Media Presentation is of type dynamic, then Segments have different Segment availability
- 31 times, i.e. the earliest time for which the service provider permits the DASH client to issue a re-
- 32 quest to the Segment and guarantees, under regular operation modes, that the client gets a 200 OK
- response for the Segment. The Segment availability times for each Representation can be com-
- 34 puted based on the information in an MPD.
- For a dynamic service the MPD should at least contain information as available in Table 6. Infor-
- 36 mation included there may be used to compute a list of announced Segments, Segment Availability
- 37 Times and URLs.

- 1 Assume that an MPD is available to the DASH client at a specific wall-clock time NOW. It is
- 2 assumed that the client and the DASH server providing the Segments are synchronized to wall-
- 3 clock, either through external means or through a specific client-server synchronization. Details
- 4 on synchronization are discussed in section 4.7.

- 5 Assuming synchronization, the information in the MPD can then be used by the client at time *NOW*
- 6 to derive the availability (or non-availability) of Segments on the server.

Table 6 -- Information related to Segment Information and Availability Times for a dynamic service

MPD Information	Status	Comment
MPD@type	mandatory, set to "dynamic"	the type of the Media Presentation is dynamic, i.e. Segments get available over time.
MPD@availabilityStartTime	mandatory	the start time is the anchor for the MPD in wall-clock time. The value is denoted as <i>AST</i> in the following.
MPD@mediaPresentationDuration	mandatory (for the considered use cases)	provides the duration of the Media Presentation.
MPD@suggestedPresentationDelay	optional, but recommended	suggested presentation delay as delta to segment availability start time. The value is denoted as <i>SPD</i> . Details on the setting and usage of the parameter is provided in the following.
MPD@minBufferTime	mandatory	minimum buffer time, used in conjunction with the @bandwidth attribute of each Representation. The value is denoted as <i>MBT</i> . Details on the setting and usage of the parameter is provided in the following.
MPD@timeShiftBufferDepth	optional, but recommended	time shift buffer depth of the media presentation. The value is denoted as <i>TSB</i> . Details on the setting and usage of the parameter is provided in the following.
Period@start	Mandatory for the first Period in the MPD	the start time of the Period relative to the MPD availability start time.
Representation@availabil- ityTimeOffset	Optional default	The offset in availability time for this Representation. It may also be available on a Base URL or default. For more details refer to section 4.3.2.2.5.

		NOTE: the value of "INF" implies availability of all segments starts at MPD@availabil-ityStartTime
SegmentTemplate@media	mandatory	The template for the Media Segment assigned to a Representation.
SegmentTemplate@startNumber	optional default	number of the first segment in the Period assigned to a Representation
SegmentTemplate@timescale	optional default	timescale for this Representation.
SegmentTemplate@duration	exactly one of SegmentTem-	the duration of each Segment
SegmentTemplate.SegmentTime-	<pre>plate@duration or Seg-</pre>	in units of a time.
line	mentTemplate.Seg-	
	mentTimeline must be pre-	
	sent per Representation.	

1 4.3.2.2. Segment Information Derivation

2 4.3.2.2.1. Introduction

- 3 Based on an MPD including information as documented in Table 6 and available at time *NOW* on
- 4 the server, a synchronized DASH client derives the information of the list of Segments for each
- 5 Representation in each Period. This section only describes the information that is expressed by the
- 6 values in the MPD. The generation of the information on the server and the usage of the infor-
- 7 mation in the client is discussed in section 4.3.3 and 4.3.4, respectively.
- 8 MPD information is provided in subsection 4.3.2.2.3. The Period based information is documented
- 9 in sub-section 4.3.2.2.4, and the Representation information is documented in sub-section
- 10 4.3.2.2.5.

13

14

1516

17

18

19

26

11 **4.3.2.2.2. Definitions**

- 12 The following definitions are relevant and aligned with ISO/IEC 23009-1:
 - available Segment is a Segment that is accessible at its assigned HTTP-URL. This means that a request with an HTTP GET to the URL of the Segment results in a reply of the Segment and 2xx status code.
 - valid Segment URL is an HTTP-URL that is promised to reference a Segment during its Segment availability period.
 - *NOW* is a time that is expressing the time on the content server as wall-clock time. All information in the MPD related to wall-clock is expressed as a reference to the time *NOW*.

20 **4.3.2.2.3. MPD** Information

- For a dynamic service without MPD updates, the following information shall be present and not present in the MPD (also please refer to Table 6):
- The MPD@type shall be set to "dynamic".
- The MPD@mediaPresentationDuration shall be present, or the Period@duration of the last Period shall be present.
 - The MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod shall not be present.

- 1 Furthermore, it is recommended to provide a value for MPD@timeShiftBufferDepth and
- 2 MPD@suggestedPresentationDelay.
- 3 4.3.2.2.4. Period Information

8

9

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

34

37

- 4 Each Period is documented by a **Period** element in the MPD. An MPD may contain one or more
- 5 Periods. In order to document the use of multiple Periods, the sequence of Period elements is
- 6 expressed by an index i with i increasing by 1 for each new Period element.
- 7 Each regular Period *i* in the MPD is assigned a
 - Period start time *PSwc[i]* in wall-clock time,
 - Period end time *PEwc*[*i*], in wall-clock time.
- Note: An MPD update may extend the Period end time of the last regular Period. For details refer to section 4.4.
- The Period start time PSwc[i] for a regular Period i is determined according to section 5.3.2.1 of ISO/IEC 23009-1:
 - If the attribute @start is present in the **Period**, then *PSwc*[i] is the sum of *AST* and the value of this attribute.
 - If the @start attribute is absent, but the previous **Period** element contains a @duration attribute then the start time of the Period is the sum of the start time of the previous Period *PSwc[i]* and the value of the attribute @duration of the previous Period. Note that if both are present, then the @start of the new Period takes precedence over the information derived from the @duration attribute.
- The Period end time PEwc[i] for a regular Period i is determined as follows:
 - If the Period is the last one in the MPD, the time PEwc[i] is obtained as
 - o the sum of *AST* and Media Presentation Duration *MPDur*, with *MPDur* the value of **MPD**@mediaPresentationDuration if present, or the sum of *PSwc[i]* of the last Period and the value of **Period**@duration of the last Period.
 - else
 - o the time PEwc[i] is obtained as the Period start time of the next Period, i.e. PEwc[i] = PSwc[i+1].
- 28 4.3.2.2.5. Representation Information
- 29 Based on such an MPD at a specific time *NOW*, a list of Segments contained in a Representation
- 30 in a Period i with Period start time PSwc[i] and Period end time PEwc[i] can be computed.
- 31 If the SegmentTemplate.SegmentTimeline is present and the SegmentTem-
- 32 plate@duration is not present, the SegmentTimeline element contains N_s S elements
- 33 indexed with $s=1, ..., N_s$, then let
 - *ts* the value of the @timescale attribute
- *ato* is the value of the @availabilityTimeOffset attribute, if present. Otherwise it is zero.
 - t[s] be the value of @t of the s-th **S** element,
 - d[s] be the value of @d of the s-th **S** element
- \bullet r[s] be,

- 1 o if the @r value is greater than or equal to zero 2 one more than the value of @r of the s-th **s** element. Note that if @r is smaller than the end of this segment timeline element, then this Represen-3 4 tation contains gaps and no media is present for this gap. 5 else 6 if t[s+1] is present, then r[s] is the ceil of (t[s+1] - t[s])/d[s]7 else r[s] is the ceil of (PEwc[i] - PSwc[i] - t[s]/ts)*ts/d[s])8 If the SegmentTemplate@duration is present and the SegmentTemplate.Seg-9 mentTimeline is not present, then 10 • $N_{s}=1$, 11 • ato is the value of the @availabilityTimeOffset attribute, if present. Otherwise it 12 13 • *ts* the value of the @timescale attribute 14 • t[s] is 0, 15 the d[s] is the value of @duration attribute 16 r[s] is the ceil of (PEwc[i] - PSwc[i] - t[s]/ts)*ts/d[s])17 4.3.2.2.6. **Media Time Information of Segment** Each Media Segment at position k=1,2,... for each Representation has assigned an earliest media 18 19 presentation time EPT[k,r,i] and an accurate segment duration SDUR[k,r,i], all measured in media 20 presentation time. 21 The earliest presentation time may be estimated from the MPD using the segment availability start 22 time minus the segment duration announced in the MPD. 23 The earliest presentation time may be accurately determined from the Segment itself. 24 25 For details on the derivation of the earliest presentation time, see section 3.2.11. 26 4.3.2.2.7. **Segment List Parameters** 27 For each Period i with Period start time PSwc[i] and Period end time PEwc[i] and each Represen-28 tation r in the Period the following information can be computed: the presentation time offset described in the MPD, o[i,r]
- 29
- 30 the availability time offset of this Representation, ato [r]
- 31 the number of the first segment described in the MPD, k1[i,r]
- 32 the number of the last segment described in the MPD, k2[i,r]
- 33 segment availability start time of the initialization segment SAST[0,i,r]
- 34 segment availability end time of the initialization segment SAET[0,i,r]
- 35 segment availability start time of each media segment SAST[k,i,r], k=k1, ..., k2
- 36 segment availability end time of each media segment SAET[k,i,r], k=k1, ..., k2
- 37 adjusted segment availability start time ASAST[0,i,r], k=0, k1, ..., k2
- 38 segment duration of each media segment SD[k,i,r], k=k1, ..., k2

• the URL of each of the segments, URL[*k*,*i*,*r*]

```
2 In addition,
```

1

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

- the latest available Period i[NOW] and the latest segment available at the server k[NOW] can be computed. This segment is also referred to as *live edge segment*.
- the earliest available Period i*[NOW] and the earliest segment available at the server k*[NOW] can be computed.

Based on the above information, for each Representation r in a Period i, the segment availability start time SAST[k,i,r], the segment availability end time of each segment SAET[k,i,r], the segment duration of each segment SD[k,i,r], and the URL of each of the segments, URL[k,i,r] within one Period i be derived as follows using the URL Template function URLTemplate(Replace-mentString, Address) as documented in subsection 4.3.2.2.8:

```
12
         • k=0
13
             SAST[0,i,r] = PSwc[i]
14
         • ASAST[0,i,r] = PSwc[i] - ato
15
         • for s=1, \dots N_s[i,r]
16
                 \circ k = k + 1
                 \circ SAST[k,i,r] = PSwc[i] + (t[s,i,r] + d[s,i,r] - o[i,r])/ts
17
                 \circ ASAST[k,i,r] = SAST[k,i,r] - ato
18
19
                 \circ SD[k,i,r] = d[s,i,r]/ts
20
                 \circ SAET[k,i,r] = SAST[k,i,r] + TSB + d[s,i,r]/ts
21
                 o if SegmentTemplate@media contains $Number$
22
                           Address=@startNumber
23
                           URL[k,i,r] = URLTemplate ($Number$, Address)
24
                    else
25
                           Address = t[s,i,r]
26
                           URL[k,i,r] = URLTemplate (\$Time\$, Address)
27
                 o for j = 1, ..., r[s, i, r]
                        • k = k + 1
28
29
                           SAST[k,i,r] = SAST[k-1,i,r] + d[s,i,r]/ts
30
                           ASAST[k,i,r] = SAST[k,i,r] - ato
31
32
                           SAET[k,i,r] = SAST[k,i,r] + TSB + d[s,i,r] / ts
33
34
                           SD[k,i,r] = d[s,i,r]/ts
35
                           if SegmentTemplate@media contains $Number$
36
                                  Address = Address + 1
37
                                  URL[k,i,r] = URLTemplate ($Number$, Address)
38
                           else
39
                                  Address = Address + d[s, i, r]
40
                                  URL[k,i,r] = URLTemplate (\$Time\$, Address)
41
         • k2[i,r] = k
42
         • SAET[0,i,r] = SAET[k2[i,r],i,r]
```

- 1 Note that not all segments documented above may necessarily be accessible at time *NOW*, but only
- 2 those that are within the segment availability time window.
- 3 Hence, the number of the first media segment described in the MPD for this Period, k1[i,r], is the
- 4 smallest k=1, 2, ... for which SAST[k, i, r] >= NOW.
- 5 The latest available Period i[NOW] is the Period i with the largest PEwc[i] and PEwc[i] is smaller
- 6 than or equal to *NOW*.
- 7 The latest available segment k[NOW] available for a Representation of Period i[NOW] (also the
- 8 live edge segment) is the segment with the largest k=0,1,2,... such that SAST[k,i,r] is smaller than
- 9 or equal to NOW. Note that this contains the Initialization Segment with k=0 as not necessarily any
- 10 media segment may yet be available for Period i[NOW]. In this case, last media segment
- k2[i[NOW]-1,r], i.e., the last media segment of the previous Period is the latest accessible media
- 12 Segment.
- 13 However, if the @availabilityTimeOffset is present, then the segments for this Represen-
- tation are available earlier than the nominal segment availability start time, namely at ASAST[k,i,r].
- 15 4.3.2.2.8. URL Generation with Segment Template
- 16 The function URL Template function URLTemplate(ReplacementString, Address) gen-
- erates a URL. For details refer to ISO/IEC 23009-1 [1], section 5.3.9.4. Once the Segment is gen-
- erated, processing of the Base URLs that apply on this segment level is done as defined in ISO/IEC
- 19 23009-1, section 5.6.
- 20 4.3.2.2.9. Synchronized Playout and Seamless Switching
- 21 In order to achieve synchronized playout across different Representations, typically from different
- 22 Adaptation Sets, the different Representations are synchronized according to the presentation time
- 23 in the Period. Specifically, the earliest presentation time of each Segment according to section
- 4.3.2.2.6 determines the playout of the Segment in the Period and therefore enables synchronized
- 25 playout of different media components as well as seamless switching within one media component.
- 26 **4.3.3.** Service Offering Requirements and Guidelines
- 27 4.3.3.1. General Service Offering Requirements
- 28 For dynamic service offerings, the MPD shall conform to DASH-IF IOP as defined in section 3
- and shall at least contain the mandatory information as documented in Table 6.
- 30 If such an MPD is accessible at time NOW at the location MPD. Location, then
- all Segments for all Representations in all Periods as announced in an MPD shall be available latest at the announced segment availability start time *SAST*[*k,i,r*] at all
- 33 URL[k,i,r] as derived in section 4.3.2.2;
- all Segments for all Representations in all Periods as announced in an MPD shall at least
- be available until the announced segment availability end time SAET[k,i,r] at all
- 36 URL[k,i,r] as derived in section 4.3.2.2;
- for all Media Segments for all Representations in all Periods as announced in an MPD the
- Segment in this Period is available prior to the sum of Period start, earliest presentation
- time and segment duration, i.e. $SAST[k,i,r] \le PSwc[i] + SD[k,r,i] + EPT[k,r,i]$;

• if a Media Segments with segment number k is delivered over a constant bitrate channel with bitrate equal to value of the @bandwidth attribute then each presentation time PT is available at the client latest at time with a delay of at most PT + MBT.

4.3.3.2. Dynamic Service Offering Guidelines

5 4.3.3.2.1. Introduction

1

2

3

4

8

9

1011

15

16

17

18

19

20

- 6 In order to offer a simple dynamic service for which the following details are known in advance,
- start at wall-clock time START,
 - exact duration of media presentation PDURATION,
 - location of the segments for each Representation at " http://example.com/\$RepresentationID\$/\$Number\$",
 - a service provide may offer an MPD as follows:

12 Table 7 – Basic Service Offering

MPD Information	Value
MPD @type	dynamic
MPD@availabilityStartTime	START
MPD@mediaPresentationDuration	PDURATION
MPD@suggestedPresentationDelay	SPD
MPD@minBufferTime	MBT
MPD@timeShiftBufferDepth	TSB
MPD.BaseURL	"http://example.com/"
Period @start	PSTART
Representation@bandwidth	BW
SegmentTemplate@media	"\$RepresentationID\$/\$Num-
	ber\$"
SegmentTemplate@startNumber	1
SegmentTemplate@duration	SDURATION

- Note that the setting of capitalized parameters is discussed in section 4.3.3.2.2.
- 14 According to the work-flow shown in Annex B:
 - the MPD is generated and published prior to time START such that DASH clients may access it prior to the start of the Media Presentation.
 - no redundant tools are considered.
 - the encoder and the segmenter generate segments of duration SDURATION and publish those on the origin server, such that they are available at URL[k] latest at their announced segment availability start time SAST[k].
- Based on the details in section 4.3.2.2, the Segment Information is derived as:
- k1 = 1
- k2 = ceil (PDURATION/SDURATION)
- for k = 1, ..., k2
- o SAST[k] = START + PSTART + k*SDURATION

1	o $SAET[k] = SAST[k] + TSB + SDURATION$
2	\circ SD[k] = SDURATION
3	o $URL[k] = http://example.com/$RepresentationID$/k$
4	• The segment availability times of the Initialization Segment are as follows:
5	\circ SAST[0] = START + PSTART
6	$\circ SAET[0] = SAET[k2]$
7	4.3.3.2.2. Basic Parameter Settings
8	In the following recommendations are provided for the
9	
10	• Time Shift Buffer Depth (TSB):
	o If the content should be consumed at the live edge, then the time shift buffer depth
11	should be set short. However, the TSB should not be smaller than the recommended
12	value of 4*SDURATION and 6 seconds in media time in order for the client to do
13	some prebuffering in more difficult network conditions.
14	o If no restrictions on the accessibility of the content are provided, then the TSB may
15	be set to a large value that even exceeds PDURATION.
16	• Suggested Presentation Delay (SPD)
17	 If synchronized play-out with other devices adhering to the same rule is desired
18	and/or the service provider wants to define the typical live edge of the program,
19	then this value should be provided. The service provider should set the value taking
20	into account at least the following:
21	• the desired end-to-end latency
22 23	 the typical required buffering in the client, for example based on the net- work condition
24	■ the segment duration SDURATION
25	• the time shift buffer depth TSB
26	o A reasonable value may be 2 to 4 times of the segment duration SDURATION, but
27	the time should not be smaller than 4 seconds in order for the client to maintain
28	some buffering.
29	• Segment Duration (SDURATION)
30	• Segment Duration (SDORATION) • The segment duration typically influences the end-to-end latency, but also the
31	switching and random access granularity as in DASH-264/AVC each segment
32	starts with a stream access point which can also be used as s switch point. The
33	service provider should set the value taking into account at least the following:
34	the desired end-to-end latency
35	the desired compression efficiency
36	• the start-up latency
37	• the desired switching granularity
38	• the desired amount of HTTP requests per second
39	 the variability of the expected network conditions
40	 Reasonable values for segment durations are between 1 second and 10 seconds.
41	Minimum Buffer Time (MBT) and bandwidth (BW)
42	o the value of the minimum buffer time does not provide any instructions to the
43	client on how long to buffer the media. This aspect is covered in 4.3.4.4. The
13	chem on non long to build the media. This aspect is covered in 4.3.4.4. The

value describes how much buffer a client should have under *ideal* network conditions. As such, MBT is not describing the burstiness or jitter in the network, it is describing the burstiness or jitter in the **content encoding**. Together with the BW value, it is a property of the content. Using the "leaky bucket" model, it is the size of the bucket that makes BW true, given the way the content is encoded.

- O The minimum buffer time provides information that for each Stream Access Point (and in the case of DASH-IF therefore each start of the Media Segment), the property of the stream: If the Representation (starting at any segment) is delivered over a constant bitrate channel with bitrate equal to value of the BW attribute then each presentation time *PT* is available at the client latest at time with a delay of at most *PT* + *MBT*.
- o In the absence of any other guidance, **the MBT should be set** to the maximum GOP size (coded video sequence) of the content, which quite often is identical **to the maximum segment duration**. The *MBT* may be set to a smaller value than maximum segment duration, but should not be set to a higher value.

In a simple and straightforward implementation, a DASH client decides downloading the next segment based on the following status information:

- the currently available buffer in the media pipeline, buffer
- the currently estimated download rate, rate
- the value of the attribute @minBufferTime, MBT
- the set of values of the @bandwidth attribute for each Representation i, BW[i]
- The task of the client is to select a suitable Representation i.
- 23 The relevant issue is that starting from a SAP on, the DASH client can continue to playout the
- data. This means that at the current time it does have *buffer* data in the buffer. Based on this model
- 25 the client can download a Representation i for which $BW[i] \leq rate*buffer/MBT$ without emptying
- 26 the buffer.

1

2

3

4

5

6 7

8

9

10

11 12

13

14

1516

17

18

19

20

21

- Note that in this model, some idealizations typically do not hold in practice, such as constant bitrate
- 28 channel, progressive download and playout of Segments, no blocking and congestion of other
- 29 HTTP requests, etc. Therefore, a DASH client should use these values with care to compensate
- 30 such practical circumstances; especially variations in download speed, latency, jitter, scheduling
- 31 of requests of media components, as well as to address other practical circumstances.
- 32 One example is if the DASH client operates on Segment granularity. As in this case, not only parts
- of the Segment (i.e., MBT) needs to be downloaded, but the entire Segment, and if the MBT is
- 34 smaller than the Segment duration, then rather the segment duration needs to be used instead of
- 35 the MBT for the required buffer size and the download scheduling, i.e. download a Representation
- 36 *i* for which $BW[i] \leq rate*buffer/max_segment_duration$.
- For low latency cases, the above parameters may be different.
- 38 **4.3.3.2.3.** Example
- 39 Assume a simple example according to Table 10.

Table 8 – Basic Service Offering

MPD Information	Value

MPD @type	dynamic
MPD@availabilityStartTime	START
MPD@mediaPresentationDuration	43sec
MPD@suggestedPresentationDelay	15sec
MPD@minBufferTime	5sec
MPD@timeShiftBufferDepth	25sec
MPD.BaseURL	"http://example.com/"
Period @start	0
SegmentTemplate@media	"\$RepresentationID\$/\$Num-
	ber\$"
SegmentTemplate@startNumber	1
SegmentTemplate@duration	5sec

1 Based on the derivation in section 4.3.3.2.1, the following holds:

- The segment availability times of the Initialization Segment are as follows:
 - o SAST[0] = START
 - o SAET[0] = START + 75 sec
- 10 Figure 4 shows the availability of segments on the *server* for different times NOW. In particular,
- before START no segment is available, but the segment URLs are valid. With time NOW advanc-
- ing, segments get available.

7 8



Figure 4 Segment Availability on the Server for different time NOW (blue = valid but not yet available segment, green = available Segment, red = unavailable Segment)

4.3.3.3. Content Offering with Periods

5 **4.3.3.3.1.** General

1 2

3

4

10

11 12

13

For content offered within a Period, and especially when offered in multiple Periods, then the content provider should offer the content such that actual media presentation time is as close as possible to the actual Period duration. It is recommended that the Period duration is the maximum of the presentation duration of all Representations contained in the Period.

A typical Multi-Period Offering is shown in Table 9. This may for example represent a service offering where main content provided in Period 1 and Period 3 are interrupted by an inserted Period 2.

Table 9 Multi-Period Service Offering

MPD Information	Value
MPD@type	dynamic
MPD@availabilityStartTime	START
MPD@mediaPresentationDuration	PDURATION
MPD@suggestedPresentationDelay	SPD
MPD@minBufferTime	MBT
MPD@timeShiftBufferDepth	TSB
MPD.BaseURL	"http://example.com/"
Period@start	PSTART
SegmentTemplate@media	"1/\$RepresentationID\$/\$Number\$"
SegmentTemplate@startNumber	1
SegmentTemplate@duration	SDURATION1

Period@start	PSTART2
Representation@availabil-	ATO2
ityTimeOffset	
SegmentTemplate@media	"2/\$RepresentationID\$/\$Number\$"
SegmentTemplate@startNumber	1
SegmentTemplate@duration	SDURATION2
Period@start	PSTART3
SegmentTemplate@media	"1/\$RepresentationID\$/\$Number\$"
SegmentTemplate@startNumber	STARTNUMBER2
SegmentTemplate@duration	SDURATION1
SegmentTemplate@presenta-	PTO
tionTimeOffset	10

- 1 The work flow for such a service offering is expected to be similar to the one in section 4.3.2.2.1.
- 2 Based on the details in section 4.3.2.2, the Segment Information is derived as:

```
3
           Period 1
 4
              o PSwc[1] = START + PSTART
 5
              o PEwc[1] = START + PSTART2
 6
              \circ k1 = 1
 7
              o k2 = ceil ((PSTART2 - PSTART1) / SDURATION)
              o for k = 1, ..., k2
 8
 9
                    • SAST[k] = PSwc[1] + k*SDURATION
10
                       SAET[k] = SAST[k] + TSB + SDURATION
11
                      SD[k] = SDURATION
12
                       URL[k] = http://example.com/1/$RepresentationID$/k
              \circ SAST[0] = PSwc[1]
13
              \circ SAET[0] = SAET[k2]
14
15
        • Period 2
16
              o PSwc[2] = START + PSTART2
17
              o PEwc[2] = START + PSTART3
18
              0 k1 = 1
19
              o k2 = ceil ((PSTART3 - PSTART2) / SDURATION2)
20
              o for k = 1, ..., k2
21
                       SAST[k] = PSwc[2] + k*SDURATION2
22
                    • ASAST[k] = SAST[k] - ATO2
23
                       SAET[k] = SAST[k] + TSB + SDURATION2
24
                       SD[k] = SDURATION2
25
                       URL[k] = http://example.com/2/$RepresentationID$/k
              \circ SAST[0] = PSwc[2]
26
27
              \circ SAET[0] = SAET[k2]
28
        • Period 3
29
              o PSwc[3] = START + PSTART3
30
              o PEwc[3] = START + PDURATION
31
              \circ k1 = 1
32
              o k2 = ceil((PSTART3 - PDURATION)/SDURATION1)
```

- \circ for k = 1, ..., k21 2 SAST[k] = PSwc[3] + k*SDURATION13 SAET[k] = SAST[k] + TSB + SDURATION14 SD[k] = SDURATION15 URL[k] = "http://example.com/1/\$Representa-6 tionID\$/(k+STARTNUMBER2-1)" 7 \circ SAST[0] = PSwc[3] \circ SAET[0] = SAET[k2] 8
- 9 Note that the number *k* describes position in the Period. The actual number used in the segment template increased by the one less than the actual start number.

11 4.3.3.3.2. Continuous Period Offering

- 12 Continuous Period offering as defined in section 3.2.12 may be used. If multiple periods are of-
- fered primarily for robustness or MPD changes, the continuous period should be used by the con-
- tent author to provide seamless experiences for the user.

15 4.3.3.4. Content Offering with Segment Timeline

16 **4.3.3.4.1. Basic Operation**

18

19

22

24

25

- 17 In order to offer a dynamic service that takes into account
 - variable segment durations
 - gaps in the segment timeline of one Representation,
- the Segment timeline as defined in ISO/IEC 23009-1, section 5.3.9.6 may be used as an alternative to the @duration attribute as shown in section 4.3.3.2.

Table 10 - Service Offering with Segment Timeline

MPD Information	Value	
MPD @type	dynamic	
MPD@availabilityStartTime	START	
MPD@mediaPresentationDuration	PDURATION	
MPD@suggestedPresentationDelay	SPD	
MPD@minBufferTime	MBT	
MPD @timeShiftBufferDepth	TSB	
MPD.BaseURL	"http://example.com/"	
Period @start	PSTART	
SegmentTemplate@media	"\$RepresentationID\$/\$Num-	
	ber\$"	
SegmentTemplate@startNumber	1	
SegmentTemplate.SegmentTimeline	t[i], n[i], d[i], r[i]	

- 23 According to the work-flow shown in Annex B:
 - the MPD is generated and published prior to time START such that DASH clients may access it prior to the start of the Media Presentation.
 - no redundant tools are considered.

- the encoder and the segmenter generally should generate segments of constant duration SDURATION and publish those on the origin server, such that they are available at URL[k] latest at their announced segment availability start time SAST[k]. However, the server may offer occasional shorter segments for encoding optimizations, e.g. at scene changes, or segment gaps (for details see section 6). If such an irregular segment is published the MPD needs to document this by a new S element in the segment timeline.
- If the segment timeline is used and the \$Time\$ template is used, then the times in the MPD shall accurately present media internal presentation times.
- 9 If the segment timeline is and the \$Number\$ template is used, then the MPD times shall at most
- deviate from the earliest presentation time documented in the MPD by 0.5sec.
- Based on these considerations, it is not feasible to operate with a single MPD if the content is not
- 12 yet known in advance. However, pre-prepared content based on the segment timeline may be of-
- fered in a dynamic fashion. The use of the Segment Timeline is most suitable for the case where
- the MPD can be updated. For details refer to section 4.4.

15 4.3.3.4.2. Basic Parameter Settings

1

2

3

4

5

6

- 16 The parameters for TSB and SPD should be set according to section 4.3.3.2.2. The segment dura-
- 17 tion SDURATION may be set according to section 4.3.3.2.2, but it should be considered that the
- service provider can offer shorter segments occasionally.

19 **4.3.3.5. Joining Recommendation**

- 20 By default, an MPD with MPD@type="dynamic" suggests that the client would want to join
- 21 the stream at the live edge, therefore to download the latest available segment (or close to, depend-
- ing on the buffering model), and then start playing from that segment onwards.
- However there are circumstances where a dynamic MPD might be used with content intended for
- 24 playback from the start, or from another position. For example, when a content provider offers
- 25 'start again' functionality for a live program, the intention is to make the content available as an
- on-demand program, but not all the segments will be available immediately.
- 27 This may be signalled to the DASH client by including an MPD Anchor, with either
- the t parameter, or
 - both the period and t parameter, in the MPD URL provided to the DASH client, or
- the POSIX parameter, for details refer to Amd.3 of ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014 [5].
- 31 The format and behaviour of MPD Anchors is defined in section C.4 of ISO/IEC 23009-1. Specif-
- ically the POSIX parameter is defined in Amd.3 of ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014 [5].
- For example to start from the beginning of the MPD the following would be added to the end of
- 34 the MPD URL provided to the DASH client:
- 35 #t=0

- Or to start from somewhere other than the start, in this case 50 minutes from the beginning of the
- 37 period with Period ID "program part 2":
- #period=program part 2&t=50:00

- Starting from a given UTC time can be achieved using the POSIX clock with t parameter. For 1
- 2 example, starting playback from Wed, 08 Jun 2016 17:29:06 GMT would be expressed as
- 3 #t=posix:1465406946
- 4 #t=posix:now stands for "live edge"
- 5 Notes:

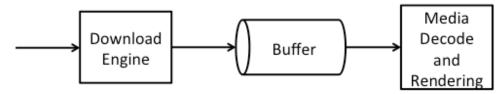
8

9

- 6 • as per section C.4 of ISO/IEC 23009-1 the time indicated using the t parameter is as per 7 the field definition of the W3C Media Fragments Recommendation v1.0 section 4.2.1.
 - the period ID has to be URL encoded/decoded as necessary and needs to match one of the Period@id fields in the MPD.
- 10 Where an MPD Anchor is used it should refer to a time for which segments are currently available 11 in the MPD.

12 4.3.4. Client Operation, Requirements and Guidelines

- 13 4.3.4.1. **Basic Operation for Single Period**
- 14 A DASH client is guided by the information provided in the MPD. A simple client model is shown
- 15 in Figure 5.



16 17

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

31

32

33

34

Figure 5 Simple Client Model

- 18 Assume that the client has access to an MPD and the MPD contains the parameters in Table 6, i.e.
- 19 it consumes a dynamic service with fixed media presentation duration.
- 20 In addition in the following for simplicity it is assumed that the MPD only contains a single Period
- with period start time PSwc[i] and the MPD-URL does not include any fragment parameters ac-21 22 cording to section 4.3.3.5.
- 23 The following example client behavior may provide a continuous streaming experience to the user:
 - 1) The client parses the MPD, selects a collection of Adaptation Sets suitable for its environment based on information provided in each of the AdaptationSet elements.
 - 2) Within each Adaptation Set it selects one Representation, typically based on the value of the @bandwidth attribute, but also taking into account client decoding and rendering capabilities.
 - 3) The client creates a list of accessible Segments at least for each selected Representation taking into account the information in the MPD as documented in Table 6 and the current time JOIN in the client and in particular the segment closest to the live edge referred to the live edge segment. For details refer to section 4.3.4.2.
 - 4) The client downloads the initialization segment of the selected Representations and then accesses the content by requesting entire Segments or byte ranges of Segments. Typically at any time the client downloads the next segment at the larger of the two: (i) completion of download of current segment or (ii) the Segment Availability Start Time of the next

- segment. Note that if the @availabilityTimeOffset is present, then the segments may be downloaded earlier, namely at the adjusted segment availability start time. Based on the buffer fullness and other criteria, rate adaptation is considered. Typically the first media segment that is downloaded is the *live edge segment*, but other decisions may be taken in order to minimize start-up latency. For details on initial buffering, refer to section 4.3.4.4.
- 5) According to Figure 5 media is fed into buffer and at some point in time, the decoding and rendering of the media is kicked off. The downloading and presentation is done for the selected Representation of each selected Adaptation. The synchronization is done using the presentation time in the Period as documented in section 4.3.2.2.9. For synchronized playout, the exact presentation times in the media shall be used.

 Once presentation has started, the playout process is continuous. The playout process expects media to be present in the buffer continuously. If the MPD@suggestedPresentationDelay is present, then this value may be used as the presentation delay PD. If the MPD@suggestedPresentationDelay is not present, but the client is expected to consume the service at the live edge, then a suitable presentation delay should be selected, typically between the value of @minBufferTime and the value of @timeShiftBufferDepth. It is recommended that the client starts rendering the first sample of the downloaded media segment k with earliest presentation time EPT(k) at PSwc[i] + (EPT(k) o[r,i]) + PD. For details on selecting and minimizing end-to-end la-
- 6) The client may request Media Segments of the selected Representations by using the generated Segment list during the availability time window.
- 7) Once the presentation has started, the client continues consuming the media content by continuously requesting Media Segments or parts of Media Segments and playing content that according to the media presentation timeline. The client may switch Representations taking into updated information from its environment, e.g. change of observed throughput. In a straight-forward implementation, with any request for a Media Segment starting with a stream access point, the client may switch to a different Representation. If switching at a stream access point, the client shall switch seamlessly at such a stream access point.
- 8) With the wall-clock time *NOW* advancing, the client consumes the available Segments. As *NOW* advances the client possibly expands the list of *available* Segments for each Representation in the Period according to the procedures specified in 4.3.4.2.
- 9) Once the client is consuming media contained in the Segments towards the end of the announced media in the Representation, then either the Media Presentation is terminated, a new Period is started (see subsection 4.3.4.3) or the MPD needs to be refetched. For details on MPD updates and refetching, please refer to section 4.4.

4.3.4.2. Determining the Segment List

- For a single Period content the client determines the available Segment List at time *NOW* according to section 4.3.2.2.7 taking into account the simplified offering in Table 7 as
- 41 k1 = 1

- k2 = ceil(PDURATION/SDURATION)
- SAST[k] = START + PSTART + k*SDURATION for k = 0, 1, ..., k2

tency as well as the start-up latency, see section 4.3.4.4.

• ASAST[k] = SAST[k] - ATO

- SAET[k] = SAST[k] + TSB + SDURATION for k = 1, ..., k2
- $2 \qquad \bullet \quad SAET[0] = SAET[k2]$
- \bullet SD[k] = SDURATION
- URL[k] = http://example.com/\$RepresentationID\$/k
- k[NOW] = MIN(floor((NOW START PSTART)/SDURATION), k2)
- k*[NOW] = MAX(k1, floor((NOW START PSTART TSB)/SDURATION)
- Note that if k[NOW] is 0, then only the Initialization Segment is available. The live edge segment
- 8 if provided as k[NOW]. If the @availabilityTimeOffset is present, then the segments for
- 9 this Representation may be downloaded from ASAST[*k*] onwards.

10 4.3.4.3. Multi-Period Content

16

17

18 19

20

2122

23

24

25

26

2728

29 30

31 32

33

34

- In an extension to the description in section 4.3.4.1 assume now that the client has access to an
- MPD and the MPD contains content with multiple Periods, for example following the parameters
- in Table 9. The start time of each Period is computed as period start time *PSwc[i]*, and the MPD-
- 14 URL does not include any fragment parameters according to section 4.3.3.5.
- In an extension of bullet 3 in section 4.3.4.1,
 - the client creates a list of accessible Segments at least for each selected Representation taking into account the information in the MPD as documented in Table 6 and the current time *NOW* in the client and in particular the segment closest to the live edge referred to the *live edge segment*.
 - For this it needs to take into account the latest Period i[NOW]. The latest Period and the latest segment are obtained as follows with i* the index of the last Period.:
 - if $NOW \le PSwc[1]$
 - o no segment is yet available
 - else if *NOW* > PSwc[i*]
 - o the last one and the latest segment is available is k2[i*]
 - else if $NOW > PSwc[i^*] + TSB$
 - o no segment is available any more
 - else if PSwc[1] < NOW <= PEwc[i*]
 - i' the such that PSwc[i'] < NOW <= PEwc[i']
 - k[NOW] = MIN(floor((NOW PEwc[i'] PSwc[i'])/SDURATION[i']), k2)
 - Note again that if k[NOW] is 0, then only the Initialization Segment is available. If the Period is not the first one, then the last available Media Segment is the last Media Segment of the previous Period.
 - In an extension of bullet 9 in section 4.3.4.1,
- the client consumes media in one Period. Once the client is consuming media contained in the Segments towards the end of the announced media in the Representation, and the Representation is contained not in the last Period, then the DASH clients generally needs to reselect the Adaptation Sets and a Representation in same manner as described in bullet 1 and 2 in section 4.3.4.1. Also steps 3, 4, 5 and 6 need to be carried out at the transition of a Period. Generally, audio/video switching across period boundaries may not be seamless.

According to ISO/IEC 23009-1, section 7.2.1, at the start of a new Period, the playout procedure of the media content components may need to be adjusted at the end of the preceding Period to match the *PeriodStart* time of the new Period as there may be small overlaps or gaps with the Representation at the end of the preceding Period. Overlaps (respectively gaps) may result from Media Segments with actual presentation duration of the media stream longer (respectively shorter) than indicated by the Period duration. Also in the beginning of a Period, if the earliest presentation time of any access unit of a Representation is not equal to the presentation time offset signalled in the <code>@presentation-TimeOffset</code>, then the playout procedures need to be adjusted accordingly.

The client should play the content continuously across Periods, but there may be implications in terms of implementation to provide fully continuous and seamless playout. It may be the case that at Period boundaries, the presentation engine needs to be reinitialized, for example due to changes in formats, codecs or other properties. This may result in a reinitialization delay. Such a re-initialization delay should be minimized. If the Media Presentation is of type dynamic, the addition of the re-initialisation delay to the playout may result in drift between the encoder and the presentation engine. Therefore, the playout should be adjusted at the end of each Period to provide a continuous presentation without adding drift between the time documented in the MPD and the actual playout, i.e. the difference between the actual playout time and the Period start time should remain constant.

If the client presents media components of a certain Adaptation Set in one Period, and if the following Period has assigned an identical Asset Identifier, then the client should identify an associated Period and, in the absence of other information, continue playing the content in the associated Adaptation Set.

If furthermore the Adaptation Sets are period-continuous, i.e. the presentation times are continuous and this is signalled in the MPD, then the client shall seamlessly play the content across the Period boundary under the constraints in section 4.3.3.3.2. Most suitably the client may continue playing the Representation in the Adaptation Set with the same @id, but there is no guarantee that this Representation is available. In this case the client shall seamlessly switch to any other Representation in the Adaptation Set.

4.3.4.4. Joining, Initial Buffering and Playout Recommendations

4.3.4.4.1. General

1 2

- 32 A DASH client should start playout from:
 - The time indicated by the MPD Anchor, if one is present
- The live edge, if there is no MPD Anchor and MPD@type="dynamic".
- 35 4.3.4.4.2. Joining at the live edge
- For joining at the live edge there are basically two high-level strategies:
 - Every client participating in the service commits to the same presentation delay (PD) relative to the announced segment availability start time at start-up and in continuous presentation, possible using one suggested by the Content Provider and then attempts to minimise start-up latency and maintain the buffer. The content provider may have provided the MPD@suggestedPresentationDelay (SPD) or may have provided this value by

- other means outside the DASH formats. The content author should be aware that the client may ignore the presence of MPD@suggestedPresentationDelay and may choose its own suitable playout scheduling.
 - The client individually picks the presentation delay (PD) in order to maximize stable quality and does this dependent on its access, user preferences and other considerations.
- In both cases the client needs to decide, which segment to download first and when to schedule the playout of the segment based on the committed PD.
- 8 A DASH client would download an available segment and typically render the earliest presentation
- 9 time EPT(k) of the segment at PSwc[i] + (EPT(k) o[r,i]) + PD. As PD may be quite large, for
- 10 example in order to provision for downloading in varying bitrate conditions, and if a segment is
- downloaded that was just made available it may result in larger start up delay.
- Therefore, a couple of strategies may be considered as a tradeoff of for start-up delay, presentation delay and sufficient buffer at the beginning of the service, when joining at the live edge:
 - 1. The client downloads the next available segment and schedules playout with delay PD. This maximizes the initial buffer prior to playout, but typically results in undesired long start-up delay.
 - 2. The client downloads the latest available segment and schedules playout with delay PD. This provides large initial buffer prior to playout, but typically results in undesired long start-up delay.
 - 3. The client downloads the earliest available segment that can be downloaded to schedules playout with delay PD. This provides a smaller initial prior to playout, but results in reasonable start-up delay. The buffer may be filled gradually by downloading later segments faster than their media playout rate, i.e. by initially choosing Representations that have lower bitrate than the access bandwidth.
- 25 In advanced strategies the client may apply also one or more of the following:
 - 1. Actual rendering may start not with the sample of the earliest presentation time, but the one that matches as closely as possible PSwc[i] + (PT o[r,i]) + PD equal to NOW.
 - 2. The client may start rendering even if only a segment is downloaded partially.
- Also if the @availabilityTimeOffset is present and the segment has an adjusted segment availability start time, then the segments may be downloaded earlier.
- 31 4.3.4.5. Requirements and Recommendations

4

5

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

2223

24

26

27

28

33

34

35

- In summary, a client that access a dynamic MPD shall at least obey the following rules:
 - The client shall be able to consume single Period and multi-Period content
 - If multi-period content is offered in a seamless manner, the client shall play seamlessly across Period boundaries.

36 **4.3.5.** Additional DVB-DASH alignment aspects

- For alignment with DVB-DASH [45], the following should be considered:
- Reasonable requirements on players around responding to response codes are provided in DVB DASH in section 10.8.6.

- Further guidelines on live edge aspects are provided in DVB DASH section 10.9.2.
- DVB DASH also provides recommendations in order to apply weights and priorities to different networks in a multi Base URL offering in section 10.8.2.1.

4 4.3.6. Considerations on live edge

- Detecting the live edge segment in DASH as well as providing a sanity check for the MPD author on the correctness of the offering may be achieved for example by the following means:
 - If the MPD contains a @publishTime attribute with value PUBT, then at the publication of the MPD all Segments according to the computation in section 4.3.4.2 and 4.3.4.3 with *NOW* set to PUBT shall be available.
 - If the MPD contains a @publishTime attribute with value PUBT and a Representation contains a Segment timeline with the @r attributed of the last S element being non-negative, then the last Segment describe in this Segment timeline shall have a Segment availability start time smaller than PUBT and the sum of the segment duration and the segment availability start time shall be larger than PUBT.
- 15 A DASH client should avoid being too aggressive in requesting segments exactly at the computed
- segment availability start time, especially if it is uncertain to be fully synchronized with the server.
- 17 If the DASH client observes issues, such as 404 responses, it should back up slightly in the re-
- 18 quests.

1

7

8

9

10

11 12

13 14

28

29

30

31 32

33

- 19 In addition, for a content authoring to avoid too aggressive requests and possible 404 responses,
- 20 the content author may schedule the segment availability start time in the MPD with a small safety
- 21 delay compared to the actual publish time. This also provides the content author a certain amount
- of flexibility in the publishing of Segments. However, note that such safety margins may lead to
- slightly increased end-to-end latencies, so it is a balance to be taken into account.

24 **4.4.** Simple Live Service Offering including MPD Updates

25 **4.4.1. Background and Assumptions**

- If many cases, the service provider cannot predict that an MPD that is once offered, may be used for the entire Media Presentations. Examples for such MPD changes are:
 - The duration of the Media Presentation is unknown
 - The Media Presentation may be interrupted for advertisements which requires proper splicing of data, for example by adding a Period
 - Operational issues require changes, for example the addition of removal of Representations or Adaptation Sets.
 - Operational problems in the backend, for example as discussed in section 4.8.
- Changes of segment durations, etc.
- 35 In this case the MPD typically only can describe a limited time into the future. Once the MPD
- expires, the service provider expects the client to recheck and get an updated MPD in order to
- 37 continue the Media Presentation.

- 1 The main tool in MPEG-DASH is Media Presentation Description update feature as described in
- 2 section 5.4 of ISO/IEC 23009-1. The MPD is updated at the server and the client is expected to
- 3 obtain the new MPD information once the determined Segment List gets to an end.
- 4 If the MPD contains the attribute MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod, then the MPD in hand will
- 5 be updated.

- According to the clustering in section 4.2, we distinguish two different types of live service offerings:
 - MPD controlled live service offering: In this case the DASH client typically frequently polls the MPD update server whether an MPD update is available or the existing MPD can still be used. The update frequency is controlled by MPD based on the attribute MPD@min-imumUpdatePeriod. Such a service offering along with the client procedures is shown in section 4.4.2.
 - MPD and segment controlled offerings. In this case the DASH client needs to parse segments in order to identify MPD validity expirations and updates on the MPD update server. MPD expiry events as described in section 5.10 of ISO/IEC 23009-1 "are pushed" to the DASH client as parts of downloaded media segments. This offering along with the client procedures is shown in section 4.5.
 - This section describes the first type of offering. In section 4.5 the MPD and segment controlled offerings are described. Under certain circumstances a service offering may be provided to both types of clients. An overview how such a service offering may be generated is shown in Annex A.

4.4.2. Preliminaries

4.4.2.1. MPD Information

As the MPD is typically updated over time on the server, the MPD that is accessed when joining the service as well as the changes of the MPD are referred to as MPD instances in the following. This expresses that for the same service, different MPDs exist depending on the time when the service is consumed.

Assume that an MPD instance is present on the DASH server at a specific wall-clock time *NOW*. For an MPD-based Live Service Offering, the MPD instance may among others contain information as available in Table 11. Information included there may be used to compute a list of announced Segments, Segment Availability Times and URLs.

Table 11 – Information related to Live Service Offering with MPD-controlled MPD Updates

MPD Information	Status	Comment
MPD@type	mandatory, set to "dynamic"	the type of the Media Presentation is dynamic, i.e. Segments get available over time.
MPD@availabilityStartTime	mandatory	the start time is the anchor for the MPD in wall-clock time. The value is denoted as <i>AST</i> .
MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod	mandatory	this field is mandatory except for the case where the

Period@start SegmentTemplate@media	mandatory	the start time of the Period relative to the MPD availability start time. The value is denoted as <i>PS</i> . the template for the Media Segment
SegmentTemplate@startNumber	optional default	the number of the first segment in the Period. The value is denoted as <i>SSN</i> .
SegmentTemplate@duration SegmentTemplate.SegmentTime- line	exactly one of SegmentTem- plate@duration or Seg- mentTemplate.Seg- mentTimeline must be present	the duration of each Segment in units of a time. The value divided by the value of $[timescale]$ is denoted as $MD[k]$ with $k=1, 2,$ The segment timeline may contain some gaps.

1 4.4.2.2. Segment Information Derivation

- 2 Based on an MPD instance including information as documented in Table 11 and available at time
- 3 NOW on the server, a DASH client may derive the information of the list of Segments for each
- 4 Representation in each Period.
- 5 If the Period is the last one in the MPD and the MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod is present, then
- 6 the time PEwc[i] is obtained as the sum of NOW and the value of MPD@minimumUpdate-
- 7 Period.
- 8 Note that with the MPD present on the server and NOW progressing, the Period end time is ex-
- 9 tended. This issue is the only change compared to the segment information generation in section
- 10 4.3.2.2.

11 4.4.2.3. Some Special Cases

- 12 If the MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod is set to 0, then the MPD documents all available seg-
- ments on the server. In this case the @r count may be set accurately as the server knows all avail-
- 14 able information.

15 **4.4.3.** Service Offering Requirements and Guidelines

16 **4.4.3.1.** General

- 17 The same service requirements as in section 4.3.3.1 hold for any time *NOW* the MPD is present
- on the server with the interpretation that the Period end time PEwc[i] of the last Period is obtained
- as the sum of *NOW* and the value of **MPD**@minimumUpdatePeriod.

- In order to offer a simple live service with unknown presentation end time, but only a single Period and the following details are known in advance,
 - start at wall-clock time START,

3

4

5

6

7

9

10

11

1213

14 15

20

21

- location of the segments for each Representation at " http://example.com/\$RepresentationID\$/\$Number\$",
- a service provider may offer an MPD with values according to Table 12.

Table 12 – Basic Service Offering with MPD Updates

MPD Information	Value
MPD@type	dynamic
MPD@availabilityStartTime	START
MPD@publishTime	PUBTIME1
MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod	MUP
MPD.BaseURL	"http://example.com/"
Period@start	PSTART
SegmentTemplate@media	"\$RepresentationID\$/\$Num-
	ber\$"
SegmentTemplate@startNumber	1
SegmentTemplate@duration	SDURATION

- 8 According to the work-flow shown in Annex B,
 - the MPD is generated and published prior to time START such that DASH clients may access it prior to the start of the Media Presentation. The MPD gets assigned a publish time PUBTIME1, typically a value that is prior to START + PSTART
 - no redundant tools are considered.
 - the encoder and the segmenter generate segments of duration SDURATION and publish those on the origin server, such that they are available at URL[k] latest at their announced segment availability start time SAST[k].
- Based on the details in section 4.3.2.2 and 4.4.2.2, the Segment Information can be derived at each time NOW by determining the end time of the Period PEwc[1] = NOW + MUP.
- The service provider may leave the MPD unchanged on the server. If this is the case the Media Presentation may be terminated with an updated MPD that
 - adds the attribute MPD@mediaPresentationDuration with value PDURATION
 - removes the attribute MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod
 - changes the MPD@publishTime attribute to PUBTIME2
- The MPD must be published latest at the end of the Media Presentation minus the value of MUP,
- i.e. PUBTIME2 <= START + PSTART + PDURATION MUP.
- 25 The minimum update period may also be changed during an ongoing Media Presentation. Note
- 26 that as with any other change to the MPD, this will only be effective with a delay in media time of
- 27 the value of the previous MUP.

- 1 The principles in this document also holds for multi-period content, for which an MPD update may
- 2 add a new Period. In the same way as for signalling the end of the Media Presentation, the publish
- 3 time of the updated MPD with the new period needs to be done latest at the start of the new Period
- 4 minus the value of the MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod attribute of the previous MPD.
- 5 Track fragment decode times should not roll over and should not exceed 2⁵³ (due to observed
- 6 limitations in ECMAScript). Two options may be considered:
 - the timescale value should be selected that the above mentioned issues are avoided. 32 bit timescales are preferable for installed-base of browsers.
 - if large track timescale values are required and/or long-lasting live sessions are setup, this likely requires the use of 64 bit values. Content authors should use 64 bit values for track fragment decode times in these cases, but should not exceed to 2⁵³ to avoid truncation issues.

4.4.3.2. Setting the Minimum Update Period Value

- 14 Setting the value of the minimum update period primarily affects two main service provider as-
- pects: A short minimum update period results in the ability to change and announce new content
- in the MPD on shorter notice. However, by offering the MPD with a small minimum update period,
- the client requests an update of the MPD more frequently, potentially resulting in increased uplink
- and downlink traffic.

7

8

9

10

11 12

13

26

27

28

29

30

31

32 33

34

- 19 A special value for the minimum update period is 0. In this case, the end time of the period is the
- 20 current time NOW. This implies that all segments that are announced in the MPD are actually
- 21 available at any point in time. This also allows changing the service provider to offer changes in
- 22 the MPD that are instantaneous on the media timeline, as the client, prior for asking for a new
- segment, has to revalidate the MPD.

24 4.4.3.3. Permitted Updates in an MPD

- According to section 5.4 of ISO/IEC 23009-1, when the MPD is updated
 - the value of MPD@id, if present, shall be the same in the original and the updated MPD;
 - the values of any Period@id attributes shall be the same in the original and the updated MPD, unless the containing Period element has been removed;
 - the values of any AdaptationSet@id attributes shall be the same in the original and the updated MPD unless the containing Period element has been removed;
 - any Representation with the same @id and within the same Period as a Representation appearing in the previous MPD shall provide functionally equivalent attributes and elements, and shall provide functionally identical Segments with the same indices in the corresponding Representation in the new MPD.
- 35 In addition, updates in the MPD only extend the timeline. This means that information provided
- 36 in a previous version of the MPD shall not be invalidated in an updated MPD. For failover cases,
- refer to section 4.8.
- 38 In order to make the MPD joining friendly and to remove data that is available in the past, any
- segments that have fallen out of the time shift buffer may no longer be announced in the MPD. In
- 40 this case, the Period start may be moved by changing one or both, MPD@availabilityStart-

- 1 Time and Period@start. However, this requires that the @startNumber, @presenta-
- 2 tionTimeOffset and S values need to be updated such that the Segment Information accord-
- 3 ing to section 4.3.2.2.6 is not modified over an MPD update.
- 4 If Representations and Adaptations Sets are added or removed or the location of the Segments is
- 5 changed, it is recommended to update the MPD and provide Adaptation Sets in a period-continu-
- 6 ous manner as defined in section 4.3.3.3.2.

7 4.4.3.4. Usage of Segment Timeline

9

10

11 12 13

14

15 16

17

18

21

- 8 If the Segment Timeline is used and @minimumUpdatePeriod greater than 0, then
 - the operation as described in section 4.3.3.4 applies, and for all Representations that use the Segment Timeline:
 - o the @r value of the last **s** element of the last regular Period shall be a negative value.
 - o only \$Number\$ template shall be used,
 - an MPD may be published for which the additional **s** elements are added at the end. An addition of such **s** element shall be such that clients that have not updated the MPD can still generate the Segment Information based on the previous MPD up to the Period end time. Note that this may lead that such clients have a different segment availability time, but the availability time may be corrected once the MPD is updated.
- An example for such an offering is shown in Table 13 where the RVALUE needs to be increased by 1 for each newly published segment.

Toble 12 Convice	Offering with Segm	ont Timoline and M	IIID greater than A
Lable 13 – Service	· Offering with Segm	ent Timeline and N	IUP greater inan u

MPD Information	Value
MPD@type	dynamic
MPD@availabilityStartTime	START
MPD@publishTime	PUBTIME1
MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod	MUP > 0
MPD.BaseURL	"http://example.com/"
Period@start	PSTART
SegmentTemplate@media	"\$RepresentationID\$/\$Time\$"
SegmentTemplate@d	SDURATION
SegmentTemplate.SegmentTime-	_1
line.S@r	1

22 4.4.3.5. Last Segment Message

- 23 If the @segmentProfiles contains the 'lmsg' brand for a certain Representation, then the
- 24 'lmsg' brand for signaling the last segment shall be applied for any content with MPD@mini-
- 25 mumUpdatePeriod present and the MPD@type="dynamic".
- 26 DASH clients operating based on such an MPD and consuming the service at the live edge typi-
- cally need to request a new MPD prior to downloading a new segment. However, in order to min-
- 28 imise MPD requests and resulting traffic load, the client may use one or more of the following
- 29 optimisations:

- If the client fetches the MPD using HTTP, the client should use conditional GET methods as specified in RFC 7232 [26] to reduce unnecessary network usage in the downlink.
- If the @segmentProfiles contains the 'lmsg' brand clients may also rely on the 'lmsg' message and request a new MPD only in case a segment is received with an 'lmsg' brand. Otherwise the client may use template constructions to continue determining the URL and the segment availability start time of segments.

If the attribute MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod is set to a value greater than 0 then all Segments with availability start time less than the sum of the request time and the value of the MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod will eventually get available at the advertised position at their computed segment availability start time. Note that by providing a MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod is set to a value greater than 0, DASH servers reduce the polling frequency of clients, but at the same time cannot expect that clients will request an updated MPD to be informed on changes in the segment URL constructions, e.g. at the start of a new Period.

4.4.4. MPD-based Live Client Operation based on MPD

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12 13

14

29

30

31

33

34

35

36

37

- 15 In an extension to the description in section 4.3.4.1 and section 4.3.4.3, the client now has access
- 16 to an MPD and the MPD contains the MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod, for example following
- 17 the parameters in Table 12. The start time of each Period is computed as period start time PSwc[i]
- and the MPD-URL does not include any fragment parameters according to section 4.3.3.5.
- 19 The client fetches an MPD with parameters in Table 11 access to the MPD at time FetchTime,
- at its initial location if no MPD. Location element is present, or at a location specified in any
- 21 present MPD. Location element. FetchTime is defined as the time at which the server pro-
- 22 cesses the request for the MPD from the client. The client typically should not use the time at
- 23 which it actually successfully received the MPD, but should take into account delay due to MPD
- 24 delivery and processing. The fetch is considered successful either if the client obtains an updated
- MPD or the client verifies that the MPD has not been updated since the previous fetching.
- 26 If the client fetches the MPD using HTTP, the client should use conditional GET methods as spec-
- ified in RFC 7232 [26] to reduce unnecessary network usage in the downlink.
- In an extension of bullet 3 in section 4.3.4.1 and section 4.3.4.3
 - the client creates a list of accessible Segments at least for each selected Representation taking into account the information in the MPD as documented in Table 11 and the current time *NOW* by using the Period end time of the last Period as FetchTime + MUP.
- In an extension of bullet 9 in section 4.3.4.1 and section 4.3.4.3,
 - the client consumes media in last announced Period. Once the client is consuming media contained in the Segments towards the end of the announced Period, i.e. requesting segments with segment availability start time close to the validity time of the MPD defined as FetchTime + MUP, them, then the DASH client needs to fetch an MPD at its initial location if no MPD. Location element is present, or at a location specified in any present MPD. Location element.
- If the client fetches the updated MPD using HTTP, the client should use conditional GET methods as specified in in RFC 7232 [26] to reduce unnecessary network usage in the downlink.

The client parses the MPD and generates a new segment list based on the new FetchTime and MUP of the updated MPD. The client searches for the currently consumed Adaptation Sets and Representations and continues the process of downloading segments based on the updated Segment List.

4.5. MPD and Segment-based Live Service Offering

4.5.1. Preliminaries

4.5.1.1. MPD Information

- In order to offer a service that relies on both, information in the MPD and in Segments, the Service
 Provider may announce that Segments contains inband information. An MPD as shown in Table
- 9 provides the relevant information. In contrast to the offering in Table 6, the following information is different:
 - The MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod is present but is recommended to be set to 0 in order to announce instantaneous segment updates.
 - The MPD@publishTime is present in order to identify different versions of MPD instances.
 - all Representations of all audio Adaptation Sets or if audio is not present, of all video Adaptation Sets, shall contain an InbandEventStream element with @scheme_id_uri = "urn:mpeg:dash:event:2012" and @value either set to 1 or set to 3. The InbandEventStream element with @scheme_id_uri = "urn:mpeg:dash:event:2012" and @value either set to 1 or set to 3 may be present in all Representations of all Adaptation Sets.
 - InbandEventStream element with @scheme_id_uri = "urn:mpeg:dash:event:2012" and @value either set to 1 or set to 3 shall only be signaled on Adaptation Set level.
 - The information included there may be used to compute a list of announced Segments, Segment Availability Times and URLs.

Table 14 - Service Offering with MPD and Segment-based Live Services

MPD Information	Status	Comment
MPD@type	mandatory, set to "dynamic"	the type of the Media Presentation is dynamic, i.e. Segments get available over time.
MPD@publishTime	mandatory	specifies the wall-clock time when the MPD was generated and published at the origin server. MPDs with a later value of @publishTime shall be an update as defined in 5.4 to MPDs with earlier @publishTime.

MPD@availabilityStartTime	mandatory	the start time is the anchor for the MPD in wall-clock time. The value is denoted as AST.
MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod	mandatory	recommended/mandate to be set to 0 to indicate that fre- quent DASH events may oc- cur
Period@start	mandatory	the start time of the Period relative to the MPD availability start time. The value is denoted as <i>PS</i> .
AdaptationSet.InbandEvent-Stream	mandatory	if the @schemeIDURI is urn:mpeg:dash:event: 2014 and the @value is 1, 2 or 3, then this described an Event Stream that supports extending the validity of the MPD.
SegmentTemplate@media	mandatory	the template for the Media Segment
SegmentTemplate@startNumber	optional default	The number of the first segment in the Period. The value is denoted as <i>SSN</i> .
SegmentTemplate@duration SegmentTemplate.SegmentTime-	exactly one of SegmentTem-	the duration of each Segment in units of a time. The value divided by the value of
line	<pre>plate@duration or Seg- mentTemplate.Seg- mentTimeline must be present</pre>	@timescale is denoted as $MD[k]$ with k=1, 2, The segment timeline may contain some gaps.

4.5.1.2. Segment Information Derivation

- 2 Based on an MPD instance including information as documented in Table 11 and available at time
- 3 NOW on the server, a DASH client may derive the information of the list of Segments for each
- 4 Representation in each Period.
- 5 If the Period is the last one in the MPD and the MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod is present, then
- 6 the time PEwc[i] is obtained as the sum of NOW and the value of MPD@minimumUpdate-
- 7 Period.

- 8 Note that with the MPD present on the server and NOW progressing, the Period end time is ex-
- 9 tended. This issue is the only change compared to the segment information generation in section
- 10 4.3.2.2.

- 1 If the MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod is set to 0, then the MPD documents all available seg-
- ments on the server. In this case the @r count may be set accurately as the server knows all avail-
- 3 able information.

4.5.2. Service Offering Requirements and Guidelines

5 4.5.2.1. Background

- 6 In section 5.10 of ISO/IEC 23009-1, section 5.10, DASH events are defined. For service offerings
- based on the MPD and segment controlled services, the DASH events specified in section 5.10.4
- 8 may be used. Background is provided in the following.
- 9 DASH specific events that are of relevance for the DASH client are signalled in the MPD. The
- 10 URN "urn:mpeg:dash:event:2012" is defined to identify the event scheme defined in Ta-
- 11 ble 10.

13

4

Table 15 InbandEventStream@value attribute for scheme with a value "urn:mpeq:dash:event:2012"

@value	Description
1	indicates that MPD validity expiration events as defined in 5.10.4.2 are signalled in the Representation. MPD validity expiration is signalled in the event stream as defined in 5.10.4.2 at least in the last segment with earliest presentation time smaller than the event time.
2	indicates that MPD validity expiration events as defined in 5.10.4.3 are signalled in the Representation. MPD validity expiration is signalled in the event stream as defined in 5.10.4.2 at least in the last segment with earliest presentation time smaller than the event time. In addition the message includes an MPD Patch as defined in 5.10.4.3 in the message_data field.
3	indicates that MPD validity expiration events as defined in 5.10.4.3 are signalled in the Representation. MPD validity expiration is signalled in the event stream as defined in 5.10.4.2 at least in the last segment with earliest presentation time smaller than the event time. In addition the message includes a full MPD as defined in 5.10.4.4 in the message_data field.

Note: DVB DASH specification [45] does not include the value 3.

- MPD validity expiration events provide the ability to signal to the client that the MPD with a specific publish time can only be used up to a certain media presentation time.
- 16 Figure 4 shows an example for MPD validity expiration method. An MPD signals the presence of
- 17 the scheme in one or several Representations. Once a new MPD gets available, that adds new
- information not present in the MPD with @publishTime="2012-11-01T09:06:31.6",
- 19 the expiration time of the current MPD is added to the segment by using the emsg box. The infor-
- 20 mation may be present in multiple segments.

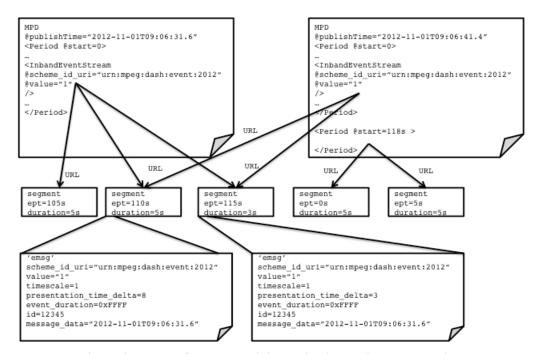


Figure 4 Example for MPD validity expiration to signal new Period

If the scheme_id_uri is set to "urn:mpeg:dash:event:2012" and the value is set to 1, then the fields in the event message box document the following:

- the message_data field contains the publish time of an MPD, i.e. the value of the MPD@publishTime.
- The media presentation time beyond the event time (indicated time by presentation_time_delta) is correctly described only by MPDs with publish time greater than indicated value in the message data field.
- the event duration expresses the remaining duration of Media Presentation from the event time. If the event duration is 0, Media Presentation ends at the event time. If 0xFFFF, the media presentation duration is unknown. In the case in which both presentation_time_delta and event_duration are zero, then the Media Presentation is ended.
- This implies that clients attempting to process the Media Presentation at the event time or later are expected to operate on an MPD with a publish time that is later than the indicated publish time in this box.
- Note that event boxes in different segments may have identical id fields, but different values for presentation time delta if the earliest presentation time is different across segments.

20 4.5.2.2. Service Offering

1 2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9 10

11 12

13

14

15

- 21 A typical service offering with an Inband event stream is provided in Table 11. In this case the
- MPD contains information that one or multiple or all Representations contain information that the
- Representation contains an event message box flow in order to signal MPD validity expirations.
- The MPD@publishTime shall be present.

5

6 7

8

9

10

11

12

13

1415

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

Table 16 – Basic Service Offering with Inband Events

MPD Information	Value	
MPD @type	dynamic	
MPD@availabilityStartTime	START	
MPD@publishTime	PUBTIME1	
MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod	MUP	
MPD.BaseURL	"http://example.com/"	
Period@start	PSTART	
<pre>InbandEventStream@scheme_id_URI</pre>	urn:mpeg:dash:event:2012	
InbandEventStream@value	1 or 3	
SegmentTemplate@duration	SDURATION	

- For a service offering based on MPD and segment-based controls, the DASH events shall be used to signal MPD validity expirations.
- 4 In this case the following shall apply:
 - at least all Representations of all audio Adaptation Sets shall contain an InbandEvent-Stream element with scheme_id_uri = "urn:mpeg:dash:event:2014" and @value either set to 1 or set to 3.
 - for each newly published MPD, that includes changes that are not restricted to any of the following (e.g. a new Period):
 - o The value of the MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod is changed,
 - o The value of a **SegmentTimeline**. **S**@r has changed,
 - o A new SegmentTimeline. S element is added
 - Changes that do not modify the semantics of the MPD, e.g. data falling out of the timeshift buffer can be removed, changes to service offerings that do not affect the client, etc.

the following shall be done

- a new MPD shall be published with a new publish time MPD@publishTime
- an 'emsg' box shall be added to each segment of each Representation that contains an **InbandEventStream** element with
 - o scheme id uri = "urn:mpeg:dash:event:2012"
 - o @value either set to 1 or set to 3
 - o If @value set to 1 or 3
 - the value of the MPD@publishTime of the previous MPD as the message data
- In addition, the following recommendations should be taken into account: All Representations of at least one media type/group contain an **InbandEventStream** element with scheme_id_uri = "urn:mpeg:dash:event:2012" and @value either set to 1 or set to 3.

4.5.3. Client Requirements and Guidelines

4.5.3.1. Introduction

1

2

6

7

8

9

10

11

13

14

15

16

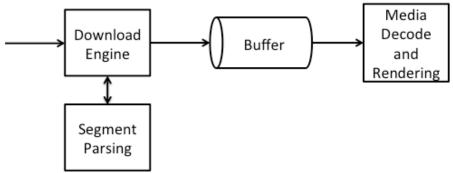
17

18 19

20

30

- A DASH client is guided by the information provided in the MPD. An advanced client model is shown in Figure 6. In contrast to the client in section 4.4.3.5, the advanced client requires parsing of segments in order to determine the following information:
 - to expand the Segment List, i.e. to generate the Segment Availability Start Time as well as the URL of the next Segment by parsing the Segment Index.
 - to update the MPD based on Inband Event Messages using the 'emsg' box with scheme_id_uri="urn:mpeg:dash:event:2012" and @value either set to 1 or set to 3.



12 Figure 6 Advanced Client Model

Assumes that the client has access to an MPD and the MPD contains the mandatory parameters in Table 9, i.e., it contains the following information:

- MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod is set to 0
 - MPD@publishTime is included and the value is set to PUBTIME
- At least on Representation is present that contains an **InbandEventStream** element with scheme_id_uri="urn:mpeg:dash:event:2012" and @value either set to 1 or set to 3.
 - Either the @duration or **SegmentTimeline** for the Representation is present.
- In an extension of bullet 7, 8 and 9 in section 4.3.4.1 and section 4.3.4.3, the following example client behaviour may provide a continuous streaming experience to the user as documented in the following.

24 4.5.3.2. MPD Validity expiration and Updates

- 25 The DASH client shall download at least one Representation that contains InbandEvent-
- 26 Stream element with scheme id uri = "urn:mpeg:dash:event:2012" and
- 27 @value either set to 1 or set to 3. It shall parse the segment at least up to the first 'moof' box.
- 28 The DASH client shall parse the segment information and extract the following values:
- ept the earliest presentation time of the media segment
 - dur the media presentation duration of the media segment

- 1 If an 'emsg' is detected scheme id uri = "urn:mpeg:dash:event:2012" and
- 2 @value either set to 1 or set to 3, the DASH client shall parse the segment information and extract
- 3 the following values:
- emsg.publish_time the publish time documented in the message data of the emsg, either directly or from the patch.
 - emsq.ptd the presentation time delta as documented in the emsg.
 - emsq.ed the event duration as documented in the emsg
- 8 After parsing, the Segment is typically forwarded to the media pipeline if it also used for rendering,
- 9 but it may either be dumped (if the Representation is only used to access the DASH event, such as
- 10 muted audio).

6

7

12

14

15

16 17

18

19

20

21

- 11 If no 'emsg' validity expiration event is included, then
 - the current MPD can at least be used up to a media presentation time ept + dur
- else if an 'emsg' validity expiration event is included, then
 - the MPD with publish time equal to emsg.publish_time can only be used up to a media presentation time ept + emsg.ptd. Note that if dur > emsg.ptd, then the Period is terminated at ept + emsg.ptd.
 - any MPD with publish time greater than emsg.publish_time can at least be used up to a media presentation time ept + emsg.ptd
 - prior to generating a segment request with earliest presentation time greater than ept + emsg.ptd, the MPD shall either
 - o be refetched and updated by the client.
 - o or if @value=3, it may be used as included in the message.

222324

25

26

27

31

32 33

34

35

3637

38

NOTE: The DVB DASH profile [45] explicitly forbids downloading a Representation solely to gain access to an Inband Event Stream contained within it. For reference, the relevant part of the DVB DASH specification is section 9.1.6.

4.5.3.3. Extended Segment Information

- The DASH client shall download the selected Representation and shall parse the segment at least up to the first 'moof' box. The DASH client shall parse the segment information and extract the following values:
 - ept the earliest presentation time of the media segment
 - o if the Segment Index is present use the Segments Index
 - o if not use the baseMediaDecodeTime in 'tfdt' of the first movie fragment as the earliest presentation time
 - dur the media presentation duration of the media segment
 - o if the Segment Index is present use the Segments Index
 - o if not use aggregated sample durations of the first movie fragment as the duration

- 1 Using this information, the DASH client should extend the Segment information and, if present
- 2 the Segment Timeline with the information provided in the Segment. This information can then be
- 3 used to generate the URL of the next Segment of this Representation. This avoids that the client
- 4 fetches the MPD, but uses the information of the Segment Timeline. However, in any doubt of the
- 5 information, for example if a new Adaptation Set is selected, or if Segments or lost, or in case of
- 6 other operational issues, the DASH client may refetch the MPD in order to obtain the complete
- 7 information from the MPD.

4.6. Provisioning of Live Content in On-Demand Mode

9 **4.6.1.** Scenario

- 10 A common scenario for DASH distribution results that a live generated service is also made avail-
- able for On-Demand offering after the live program is completed. The typical scenario is as fol-
- 12 lows:

8

13

14 15

20

30

31

32

33 34

35

36 37

38

39

- The Segments as generated for the live service are also used for the On-Demand case. This avoids reformatting and also permits to reuse the Segments that are already cached.
 - The MPD is modified to reflect that the content is available as On-Demand now.
- Problems that results from live delivery may be solved, e.g. variable segment durations, or issues of segment unavailability.
- The content may be augmented with ads.
- The content may be trimmed from a longer, e.g. 24/7 stream, at the beginning and/or end.

4.6.2. Content Offering Requirements and Recommendations

- In order to provide live content as On-Demand in the above scenario, the following is recommended:
- The same Segments as generated for the live (i.e. MPD@type is set to dynamic) distribution are reused also for static distribution (i.e. MPD@type is set to static).
- Typically, the Segments also will have the same URL in order to exploit caching advantages.
- An MPD should be generated latest at the end of the live session, but also may be created during an ongoing live session to document a certain window of the program that is offered for On-Demand.
 - A new MPD is generated that should contain the following information
 - o The MPD@type is set to static.
 - o The MPD@availabilityStartTime should be removed or be maintained from the live MPD since all resources referenced in the MPD are available. If the MPD@availabilityStartTime is maintained for a portion of the live program that is offered in the static MPD the Period@start value (including the presentation time offset and the start number) and the presentation duration shall be set accordingly. The relationship to the wall-clock time should be maintained by offsetting the Period@start without changing the MPD@availabilityStartTime.

2 The attributes @timeShiftBufferDepth and @minimumUpdatePeriod 3 shall not be present (in contrast to the live MPD), i.e. it is expected that such 4 attributes are removed. Note that according to ISO/IEC 23009-1, that if present, a 5 client is expected to ignore these attributes for MPD@type set to static. 6 The presentation duration is determined through either the 7 @mediaPresentationDuration attribute or, if not present, through the 8 sum of the *PeriodStart* and the **Period**@duration attribute of the last Period 9 in the MPD. 10 Content may be offered in the same Period structure as for live or in a different 11 one. 12 If Periods are continuous, it is preferable to remove the Period structure. 13 If new Periods are added for Ad Insertion, the Periods preferably be added in a way that they are at Segment boundaries. 14 15 Independent whether the @duration attribute or the SegmentTimeline element was used for the dynamic distribution, the static distribution version may 16 17 have a **SegmentTimeline** with accurate timing to support seeking and to 18 possibly also signal any gaps in the Segment timeline. To obtain the accurate 19 timeline, the segments may have to be parsed (at least up to the tfdt) to extract the duration of each Segment. 20 21 The same templating mode as used in the live service should also be used for 22 static distribution. 23 o MPD validity expiration events should not be present in the MPD. However, it is 24 not expected that 'emsq' boxes are removed from Segments. 4.6.3. **Client Behavior** 25 26 For a DASH client, there is basically no difference on whether the content was generated from a live service or the content is provided as On-Demand. However, there are some aspects that may 27 28 be "left-overs" from a live service distribution that a DASH client should be aware of: 29 The Representations may show gaps in the Segment Timeline. Such gaps should be recog-

As profile, the simple live profile may be used

1

30 31

32

33

nized and properly handled. For example a DASH client may find a gap only in one Rep-

resentation of the content and therefore switches to another Representation that has no gap.

The DASH client shall ignore any possibly present DASH Event boxes 'emsg' (e.g.,

MPD validity expirations) for which no Inband Event Stream is present in the MPD.

4.7. Availability Time Synchronization between Client and Server

2 4.7.1. Background

1

13

14

15

16 17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

2627

28 29

30

- 3 According to ISO/IEC 23009-1 [1] and section 4.3, in order to properly access MPDs and Seg-
- 4 ments that are available on origin servers or get available over time, DASH servers and clients
- 5 should synchronize their clocks to a globally accurate time standard.
- 6 Specifically Segment Availability Times are expected to be wall-clock accurately announced in
- 7 the MPD and the client needs to have access to the same time base as the MPD generation in order
- 8 to enable a proper service. In order to ensure this, this section provides server and client require-
- 9 ments to ensure proper operation of a live service.

10 **4.7.2. Service Provider Requirements and Guidelines**

- $11 \qquad \text{If the Media Presentation is dynamic or if the $\tt MPD@availabilityStartTime is present then} \\$
- the service shall provide a Media Presentation as follows:
 - The segment availability times announced in the MPD should be generated from a device that is synchronized to a globally accurate timing source, preferably using NTP.
 - The MPD should contain at least one **UTCTiming** element with @schemeIdURI set to one of the following:

```
o urn:mpeg:dash:utc:ntp:2014
o urn:mpeg:dash:utc:http-head:2014
o urn:mpeg:dash:utc:http-xsdate:2014
o urn:mpeg:dash:utc:http-iso:2014
o urn:mpeg:dash:utc:http-ntp:2014
```

- If the MPD does not contain any element UTCTiming then the segments shall be available latest at the announced segment availability time using a globally accurate timing source.
- If the MPD contains an element **UTCTiming** then
 - o the announced timing information in the **UTCTiming** shall be accessible to the DASH client, and
 - the segments shall be available latest at the announced segment availability time in the MPD for any device that uses one of announced time synchronization methods at the same time.
- 31 If urn:mpeg:dash:utc:http-head:2014 is used, then the server specified in the @value
- attribute of the **UTCTiming** element should be the server hosting the DASH segments such that
- with each request the Date general-header field in the HTTP header (see in RFC 7231 [25], section
- 7.1.12) can be used by the client to maintain synchronization.
- Note that in practical deployments segment availability may be an issue due to failures, losses,
- outages and so on. In this case the Server should use methods as defined in section 4.8 to inform
- 37 DASH clients about potential issues on making segments available.
- A leap second is added to UTC every 18 months on average. A service provider should take into
- account the considerations in RFC 7164 [53].

- 1 The MPD time does not track leap seconds. If these occur during a live service they may advance
- 2 or retard the media against the real time.

3 4.7.3. Client Requirements and Guidelines

- $4 \qquad \text{If the Media Presentation is dynamic or if the $\tt MPD@availabilityStartTime is present then} \\$
- 5 client should do the following:

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

31

32

33

34

35

36

- If the MPD does not contain any element **UTCTiming** it should acquire an accurate wall-clock time from its system. The anticipated inaccuracy of the timing source should be taken into account when requesting segments close to their segment availability time boundaries.
- If the MPD contains one or several elements **UTCTiming** then the client should at least use one of the announced timing information in the **UTCTiming** to synchronize its clock. The client must not request segments prior to the segment availability start time with reference to any of the chosen **UTCTiming** methods.

Note: The DVB DASH [45] spec requires support for http-xsdate and http-head but allows content providers to include others in addition, and allows clients to choose others in preference if they wish. For details, refer to section 4.7 of the DVB DASH specification.

- The client may take into account the accuracy of the timing source as well as any transmission delays if it makes segment requests.
 - Clients shall observe any difference between their time zone and the one identified in the MPD, as MPDs may indicate a time which is not in the same timezone as the client.
 - If the client observes that segments are not available at their segment availability start time, the client should use the recovery methods defined in section 4.8.
- Clients should not access the **UTCTiming** server more frequently than necessary.

24 **4.8. Robust Operation**

- 25 **4.8.1. Background**
- 26 In order to support some of the advanced use cases documented in section 2, robust service offer-
- 27 ings and clients are relevant. This document lists the relevant ones.
- **4.8.2.** Tools for Robust Operations
- 29 **4.8.2.1.** General Robustness
- 30 General Guidelines in ISO/IEC 23009-1 [1] DASH spec in A.7:
 - The DASH access client provides a streaming service to the user by issuing HTTP requests for Segments at appropriate times. The DASH access client may also update the MPD by using HTTP requests. In regular operation mode, the server typically responds to such requests with status code 200 OK (for regular GET) or status code 206 Partial Content (for partial GET) and the entity corresponding to the requested resource. Other Successful 2xx or Redirection 3xx status codes may be returned.
- HTTP requests may result in a Client Error 4xx or Server Error 5xx status code. Some guidelines are provided in this subclause as to how an HTTP client may react to such error codes.

- If the DASH access client receives an HTTP client or server error (i.e. messages with 4xx or 5xx error code), the client should respond appropriately (e.g. as indicated in in RFC 7231 [25]) to the error code. In particular, clients should handle redirections (such as 301 and 307) as these may be used as part of normal operation.
- If the DASH access client receives a repeated HTTP error for the request of an MPD, the appropriate response may involve terminating the streaming service.
- If the DASH access client receives an HTTP client error (i.e. messages with 4xx error code) for the request of an Initialization Segment, the Period containing the Initialization Segment may not be available anymore or may not be available yet.
- Similarly, if the DASH access client receives an HTTP client error (i.e. messages with 4xx error code) for the request of a Media Segment, the requested Media Segment may not be available anymore or may not be available yet. In both these case the client should check if the precision of the time synchronization to a globally accurate time standard or to the time offered in the MPD is sufficiently accurate. If the clock is believed accurate, or the error re-occurs after any correction, the client should check for an update of the MPD. If multiple BaseURL elements are available, the client may also check for alternative instances of the same content that are hosted on a different server.
- Upon receiving server errors (i.e. messages with 5xx error code), the client should check for an update of the MPD. If multiple **BaseURL** elements are available, the client may also check for alternative instances of the same content that are hosted on a different server.

4.8.3. Synchronization Loss of Segmenter

- In order to address synchronization loss issues at the segmenter, the following options from the DASH standard should be considered with preference according to the order below:
 - 1. The server is required to always offer a conforming media stream. In case the input stream or encoder is lost, the content author may always add dummy content. This may be done using a separate Period structure and is possible without any modifications of the standard.
 - 2. Early Terminated Periods as included Cor.1 of the second edition of ISO/IEC 23009-1. Early Terminated Periods may be added that contain both Period@start and Period@duration. This expresses that for this Period no media is present at least for the time as expressed by the @duration attribute. Such Periods should only be used if Media Presentation author is experiencing issues in generating media, e.g. due to failures of a live feed. The MPD is updated using the @minimumUpdatePeriod, i.e. the timeline is progressing. This permits server to signal that there is an outage of media generation, but that the service is continuing. It is then up to the client to take appropriate actions.

4.8.4. Encoder Clock Drift

- 37 In order to support robust offering even under encoder drift circumstances, the segmenter should
- avoid being synced to the encoder clock. In order to improve robustness, in the case of an MPD-
- 39 based offering Periods should be added in a period continuous manner. In the case of MPD and
- segment-based control, the producer reference box should be added to media streams in order for
- 41 the media pipeline to be aware of such drifts. In this case the client should parse the segment to
- 42 obtain this information.

1 4.8.5. Segment Unavailability

- 2 To address signaling of segment unavailability between the client and server and to indicate the
- 3 reason for this, it is recommended to use regular 404s. In addition, unless a UTC Timing has been
- 4 defined prior in the MPD, the Date-Header specifying the time of the server should be used. In this
- 5 case, the DASH client, when receiving a 404, knows that if its time is matching the Date Header,
- 6 then the loss is due to a segment loss.

7 **4.8.6.** Swapping across Redundant Tools

- 8 To enable swapping across redundant tools doing hot and warm swaps, the following should be
- 9 considered
- 1. the content author is offering the service redundant to the client (for example using multiple Base URLs) and the client determines the availability of one or the other. This may be possible under certain circumstances
- 2. Periods may be inserted at a swap instance in order to provide the new information after swap. If possible, the offering may be continuous, but the offering may also be non-continuous from a media time perspective.
- 3. A completely new MPD is sent that removes all information that was available before any only maintains some time continuity. However, this tool is not fully supported yet in any DASH standard and not even considered.
- 19 There is a clear preference for the bullets above in their order 1, 2 and 3 as the service continuity
- 20 is expected to be smoother with higher up in the bullet list. At the same time, it may be the case
- 21 that the failure and outages are severe and only the third option may be used.

22 **4.8.7.** Service Provider Requirements and Guidelines

The requirements and guidelines in subsections 8.2 to 8.6 shall be followed.

24 **4.8.8.** Client Requirements and Guidelines

- 25 The client shall implement proper methods to deal with service offerings provided in section 8.2
- 26 to 8.6.

27 4.9. Interoperability Aspects

- 28 **4.9.1.** Introduction
- 29 In order to provide interoperability based on the tools introduce in this section a restricted set of
- interoperability points are defined.

31 **4.9.2. Simple Live Operation**

- 32 **4.9.2.1. Definition**
- 33 The simple live interoperability point permits service offerings with formats defined in the first
- edition of ISO/IEC 23009-1 [4] as well as in DASH-IF IOPs up to version 2. The DASH client is
- 35 not required to parse media segments for proper operation, but can rely exclusively on the infor-
- 36 mation in the MPD.

1 4.9.2.2. Service Requirements and Recommendations

- 2 Service offerings conforming to this operation shall follow
 - The general requirements and guidelines in section 4.3.3
- the MPD Update requirements and guidelines in section 4.4.3
- the requirements and guidelines for service offering of live content in on-demand mode in section 4.6.2
 - the synchronization requirements and guidelines in section 4.7.2
- the robustness requirements and guidelines in section 4.8.7

9 4.9.2.3. Client Requirements and Recommendations

- 10 Clients claiming conformance to this operation shall follow
- The general requirements and guidelines in section 4.3.4
 - the MPD Update requirements and guidelines in section 4.4.3.5
- the requirements and guidelines for service offering of live content in on-demand mode in section 4.6.3.
 - the synchronization requirements and guidelines in section 4.7.3,
- the robustness requirements and guidelines in section 4.8.8,

17 **4.9.3. Main Live Operation**

- 18 **4.9.3.1. Definition**
- 19 The main live operation permits service offerings with formats defined in the second edition of
- 20 ISO/IEC 23009-1 [1]. In this case the DASH client may be required to parse media segments for
- 21 proper operation.

3

7

12

15

24

26

27

29

30

37

38

22 4.9.3.2. Service Requirements and Recommendations

- 23 Service offerings claiming conformance to main live shall follow
 - the requirements and guidelines in section 4.3.3
- 25 either
 - o the requirements and guidelines in section 4.4.3. Note that in this case no profile identifier needs to be added.
- 28 or
- o the segment-based MPD update requirements and guidelines in section 4.5.2. In this case the profile identifier shall be added.
- the requirements and guidelines for service offering of live content in on-demand mode in section 4.6.2
- the synchronization requirements and guidelines in section 4.7.2
- the robustness requirements and guidelines in section 4.8.7

35 4.9.3.3. Client Requirements and Recommendations

- 36 Clients claiming conformance to main live shall follow
 - the requirements and guidelines in section 4.3.4,
 - the MPD-update requirements and guidelines in section 4.4.3.5,
- the segment-based MPD update requirements and guidelines in section 4.5.3,

- the requirements and guidelines for service offering of live content in on-demand mode in section 4.6.3.
- the synchronization requirements and guidelines in section 4.7.3,
- the robustness requirements and guidelines in section 4.8.8.

5 **5. Ad Insertion in DASH**

6 5.1. Introduction

7 **5.1.1.** General

- 8 This section provides recommendations for implementing ad insertion in DASH. Specifically, it
- 9 defines the reference architecture and interoperability points for a DASH-based ad insertion solu-
- 10 tion
- 11 The baseline reference architecture addresses both server-based and app-based scenarios. The for-
- mer approach is what is typically used for Apple HLS, while the latter is typically used with Mi-
- 13 crosoft SmoothStreaming and Adobe HDS.

14 **5.1.2. Definitions**

- 15 The following definitions are used in this section:
- 16 **Ad Break**: A location or point in time where one or more ads may be scheduled for delivery; same as
- 17 avail and placement opportunity.
- 18 **Ad Decision Service**: functional entity that decides which ad(s) will be shown to the user. It
- interfaces deployment-specific and are out of scope for this document.
- 20 Ad Management Module: logical service that, given cue data, communicates with the ad decision
- service and determines which advertisement content (if at all) should be presented during the ad
- break described in the cue data.
- 23 **Cue**: indication of time and parameters of the upcoming ad break. Note that cues can indicate a
- 24 pending switch to an ad break, pending switch to the next ad within an ad break, and pending switch
- 25 from an ad break to the main content.
- 26 **CDN node**: functional entity returning a segment on request from DASH client. There are no
- assumptions on location of the node.
- 28 **Packager:** functional entity that processes conditioned content and produces media segments suitable
- for consumption by a DASH client. This entity is also known as fragmenter, encapsulater, or
- 30 segmenter. Packager does not communicate directly with the origin server its output is written to
- 31 the origin server's storage.
- 32 **Origin**: functional entity that contains all media segments indicated in the MPD, and is the fallback if
- CDN nodes are unable to provide a cached version of the segment on client request.
- 34 **Splice Point**: point in media content where its stream may be switched to the stream of another
- 35 content, e.g. to an ad.
- 36 **MPD Generator**: functional entity returning an MPD on request from DASH client. It may be
- generating an MPD on the fly or returning a cached one.
- 38 **XLink resolver**: functional entity which returns one or more remote elements on request from
- 39 DASH client.

5.1.3. DASH Concepts

2 5.1.3.1. Introduction

1

- 3 DASH ad insertion relies on several DASH tools defined in the second edition of ISO/IEC 23009-
- 4 1 [5], which are introduced in this section. The correspondence between these tools and ad inser-
- 5 tion concepts are explained below.

6 5.1.3.2. Remote Elements

- 7 Remote elements are elements that are not fully contained in the MPD document but are referenced
- 8 in the MPD with an HTTP-URL using a simplified profile of XLink.
- 9 A remote element has two attributes, @xlink:href and @xlink:actuate.@xlink:href
- 10 contains the URL for the complete element, while @xlink:actuate specifies the resolution
- model. The value "onLoad" requires immediate resolution at MPD parse time, while "onRe-
- 12 quest" allows deferred resolution at a time when an XML parser accesses the remote element.
- In this text we assume deferred resolution of remote elements, unless explicitly stated otherwise.
- While there is no explicit timing model for earliest time when deferred resolution can occur, the
- specification strongly suggests it should be close to the expected playout time of the corresponding
- Period. A reasonable approach is to choose the resolution at the nominal download time of the
- 17 Segment.

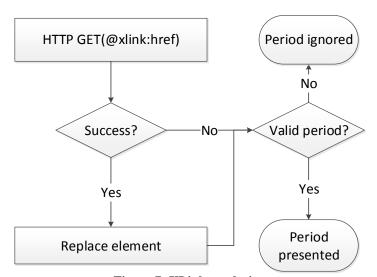


Figure 7: XLink resolution

- Resolution (a.k.a. dereferencing) consists of two steps. Firstly, a DASH client issues an HTTP GET request to the URL contained in the @xlink:href, attribute of the *in-MPD element*, and the XLink resolver responds with a *remote element entity* in the response content. In case of error response or syntactically invalid remote element entity, the @xlink:href and
- 24 @xlink: actuate attributes the client shall remove the *in-MPD element*.
- 25 If the value of the @xlink:href attribute is urn:mpeg:dash:resolve-to-zero:2013,
- 26 HTTP GET request is not issued, and the in-MPD element shall be removed from the MPD. This
- 27 special case is used when a remote element can be accessed (and resolved) only once during the
- 28 time at which a given version of MPD is valid.
- 29 If a syntactically valid remote element entity was received, the DASH client will replace in-MPD
- 30 element with remote period entity.

- 1 Once a remote element entity is resolved into a fully specified element, it may contain an
- 2 @xlink:href attribute with @xlink:actuate set to 'onRequest', which contains a new
- 3 XLink URL allowing repeated resolution.
- 4 Note that the only information passed from the DASH client to the XLink resolver is encoded
- 5 within the URL. Hence there may be a need to incorporate parameters into it, such as splice time
- 6 (i.e., *PeriodStart* for the remote period) or cue message.

7 8

Note: In ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014/Cor.3 it is clarified that if multiple top-level remote elements are included, the remote element entity is not a valid XML document.

- 11 **5.1.3.3.** Periods
- 12 **5.1.3.3.1.** Timing
- Periods are time-delimited parts of a DASH Media Presentation. The value of *PeriodStart* can be
- explicitly stated using the Period@start attribute or indirectly computed using Period@du-
- 15 ration of the previous Periods.
- Precise period duration of period i is given by PeriodStart(i+1) PeriodStart(i). This can accom-
- modate the case where media duration of period i is slightly longer than the period itself, in which
- case a client will schedule the start of media presentation for period i+1 at time PeriodStart(i+1).
- 19 Representation@presentationTimeOffset specifies the value of the presentation
- 20 time at *PeriodStart(i)*.
- 21 5.1.3.3.2. Segment Availability
- 22 In case of dynamic MPDs, Period-level BaseURL@availabilityTimeOffset allow earlier
- 23 availability start times. A shorthand notation @availabilityTimeOffset="INF" at a Pe-
- 24 riod-level **BaseURL** indicates that the segments within this period are available at least as long as
- 25 the current MPD is valid. This is the case with stored ad content. Note that DASH also allows
- specification of @availabilityTimeOffset at Adaptation Set and Representation level.
- 27 **5.1.3.3.3.** Seamless transition
- 28 The DASH specification says nothing about Period transitions i.e., there are no guarantees for
- 29 seamless continuation of playout across the period boundaries. Content conditioning and receiver
- 30 capability requirements should be defined for applications relying on this functionality. However,
- 31 Period continuity may be used and signaled using the tools defined in ISO/IEC 23009-
- 32 1:2014/Amd.3 [5].
- 33 **5.1.3.3.4.** Period labeling
- 34 Period-level **AssetIdentifier** descriptors identify the asset to which a given Period belongs.
- 35 Beyond identification, this can be used for implementation of client functionality that depends on
- distinguishing between ads and main content (e.g. progress bar and random access).
- 37 **5.1.3.4. DASH** events
- 38 DASH events are messages having type, timing and optional payload. They can appear either in
- 39 MPD (as period-level event stream) or inband, as ISO-BMFF boxes of type 'emsg'. The 'emsg'
- boxes shall be placed at the very beginning of the Segment, i.e. prior to any media data, so that
- DASH client needs a minimal amount of parsing to detect them.

- 1 DASH defines three events that are processed directly by a DASH client: MPD Validity Expira-
- 2 tion, MPD Patch and MPD Update. All signal to the client that the MPD needs to be updated by
- 3 providing the publish time of the MPD that should be used, by providing an XML patch that can
- 4 be applied to the client's in-memory representation of MPD, or by providing a complete new MPD.
- 5 For details please see section 4.5.
- 6 User-defined events are also possible. The DASH client does not deal with them directly they
- 7 are passed to an application, or discarded if there is no application willing or registered to process
- 8 these events. A possible client API would allow an application to register callbacks for specific
- 9 event types. Such callback will be triggered when the DASH client parses the 'emsg' box in a
- Segment, or when it parses the **Event** element in the MPD.
- In the ad insertion context, user-defined events can be used to signal information, such as cue
- 12 messages (e.g. SCTE 35 [57])

13 **5.1.3.5. MPD** Updates

- 14 If MPD@minimumUpdatePeriod is present, the MPD can be periodically updated. These up-
- dates can be synchronous, in which case their frequency is limited by MPD@minimumUpdate-
- 16 Period. In case of the main live profiles MPD updates may be triggered by DASH events. Fir
- details refer to section 4.5.
- 18 When new period containing stored ads is inserted into a linear program, and there is a need to
- unexpectedly alter this period the inserted media will not carry the 'emsg' boxes these will need
- 20 to be inserted on-the-fly by proxies. In this case use of synchronous MPD updates may prove
- 21 simpler.
- 22 MPD@publishTime provides versioning functionality: MPD with later publication times in-
- clude all information that was included all MPDs with earlier publication times.

24 **5.1.3.6.** Session information

- 25 In order to allow fine-grain targeting and personalization, the identity of the client/viewer, should
- be known i.e. maintain a notion of a session.
- 27 HTTP is a stateless protocol, however state can be preserved by the client and communicated to
- 28 the server.
- 29 The simplest way of achieving this is use of cookies. According to RFC 6265 [44], cookies set via
- 30 2xx, 4xx, and 5xx responses must be processed and have explicit timing and security model.

31 **5.1.3.7.** Tracking and reporting

- 32 The simplest tracking mechanism is server-side logging of HTTP GET requests. Knowing request
- times and correspondence of segment names to content constitutes an indication that a certain part
- of the content was requested. If MPDs (or remote element entities) are generated on the fly and
- 35 identity of the requester is known, it is possible to provide more precise logging. Unfortunately
- 36 this is a non-trivial operation, as same user may be requesting parts of content from different CDN
- 37 nodes (or even different CDNs), hence log aggregation and processing will be needed.
- Another approach is communicating with existing tracking server infrastructure using existing ex-
- ternal standards. An IAB VAST-based implementation is shown in section 5.3.3.7.
- 40 DASH Callback events are defined in ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014 AMD3 [5], are a simple native im-
- 41 plementation of time-based impression reporting (e.g., quartiles). A callback event is a promise by

- the DASH client to issue an HTTP GET request to a provided URL at a given offset from *Period*-
- 2 Start. The body of HTTP response is ignored. Callback events can be both, MPD and inband
- 3 events.

4 **5.2.** Architectures

- 5 The possible architectures can be classified based on the location of component that communicates
- 6 with the ad decision service: a server-based approach assumes a generic DASH client and all com-
- 7 munication with ad decision services done at the server side (even if this communication is trig-
- 8 gered by a client request for a segment, remote element, or an MPD. The *app-based* approach
- 9 assumes an application running on the end device and controlling one or more generic DASH
- 10 clients.
- Yet another classification dimension is amount of media engines needed for a presentation -i.e.,
- whether parallel decoding needs to be done to allow seamless transition between the main and the
- inserted content, or content is conditioned well enough to make such transition possible with a
- 14 single decoder.
- Workflows can be roughly classified into *linear* and *elastic*. Linear workflows (e.g., live feed from
- an event) has ad breaks of known durations which have to be taken: main content will only resume
- after the end of the break and the programmer / operator needs to fill them with some inserted
- content. Elastic workflows assume that the duration of an ad break at a given cue location not
- 19 fixed, thus the effective break length can vary (and can be zero if a break is not taken).

5.3. Server-based Architecture

5.3.1. Introduction

1

2

3

5

6

7 8

9

10

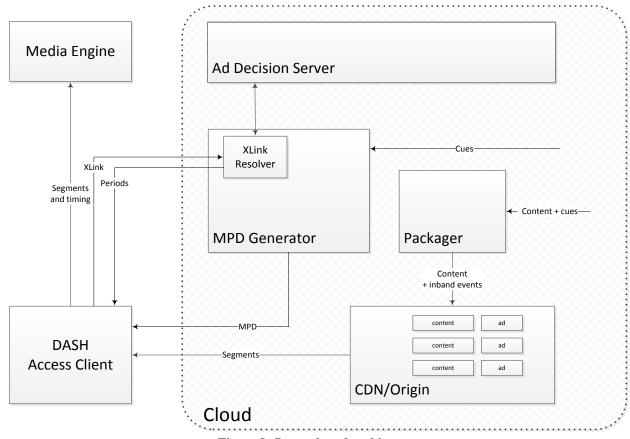


Figure 8: Server-based architecture

In the server-based model, all ad-related information is expressed via MPD and segments, and ad decisions are triggered by client requests for MPDs and for resources described in them (Segments, remote periods).

- The server-based model is inherently MPD-centric all data needed to trigger ad decision is concentrated in the MPD. In case where ad break location (i.e., its start time) is unknown at the MPD generation time, it is necessary to rely on MPD update functionality. The two possible ways of
- achieving these are described in 5.1.3.5.
- 12 In the live case, packager receives feed containing inband cues, such as MPEG-2 TS with SCTE
- 13 35 cue messages [57]. The packager ingests content segments into the CDN. In the on demand
- case, cues can be provided out of band.
- Ad management is located at the server side (i.e., in the cloud), thus all manifest and content con-
- 16 ditioning is done at the server side.
- 17 **5.3.2. Mapping to DASH**
- **18 5.3.2.1. Period elements**
- 19 **5.3.2.1.1.** General
- 20 A single ad is expressed as a single **Period** element.

- 1 Periods with content that is expected to be interrupted as a result of ad insertion should contain
- 2 explicit start times (**Period**@start), rather than durations. This allows insertion of new periods
- 3 without modifying the existing periods. If a period has media duration longer then the distance
- 4 between the start of this period and the start of next period, use of start times implies that a client
- 5 will start the playout of the next period at the time stated in the MPD, rather than after finishing
- 6 the playout of the last segment.
- 7 An upcoming ad break is expressed as Period element(s), possibly remote.

8 5.3.2.1.2. Remote Period elements.

- 9 Remote Periods are resolved on demand into one or more than one Period elements. It is possible
- 10 to embed parameters from the cue message into the XLink URL of the corresponding remote pe-
- riod, in order to have them passed to the ad decision system via XLink resolver at resolution time.
- 12 In an elastic workflow, when an ad break is not taken, the remote period will be resolved into a
- period with zero duration. This period element will contain no adaptation sets.
- If a just-in-time remote Period dereferencing is required by use of @xlink:actuate="onRe-
- 15 quest", MPD update containing a remote period should be triggered close enough to the intended
- splice time. This can be achieved using MPD Validity events and full-fledged MPD update, or
- using MPD Patch and MPD Update events (see sec. 5.1.3.5 and 5.1.3.4). However, due to security
- reasons MPD Patch and MPD Update events should only be used with great care.
- 19 In case of Period@xlink:actuate="onRequest", MPD update and XLink resolution
- should be done sufficiently early to ensure that there are no artefacts due to insufficient time given
- 21 to download the inserted content. Care needs to be taken so that the client is given a sufficient
- amount of time to (a) request and receive MPD update, and (b) dereference the upcoming remote
- 23 period.
 - NOTE: It may be operationally simpler to avoid use of **Period**@xlink:actu-ate="onRequest", dereferencing in case of live content.

252627

24

5.3.2.2. Asset Identifiers

- 28 AssetIdentifier descriptors identify the asset to which a Period belongs. This can be used
- 29 for implementation of client functionality that depends on distinguishing between ads and main
- 30 content (e.g. progress bar).
- 31 Periods with same AssetIdentifier should have identical Adaptation Sets, Initialization
- 32 Segments and same DRM information (i.e., DRM systems, licenses). This allows reuse of at least
- 33 some initialization data across periods of the same asset, and ensures seamless continuation of
- 34 playback if inserted periods have zero duration. Period continuity may be signaled.

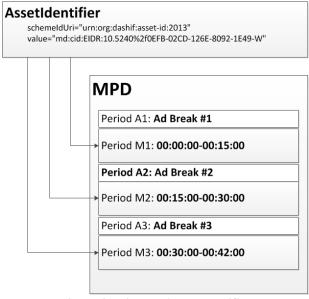


Figure 9 Using an Asset Identifier

1 2 3

4

5.3.2.3. MPD updates

- MPD updates are used to implement dynamic behavior. An updated MPD may have additional (possibly remote) periods. Hence, MPD update should be triggered by the arrival of the first cue message for an upcoming ad break. Ad breaks can also be canceled prior to their start, and such
- 8 cancellation will also trigger an MPD update.
- Frequent regular MPD updates are sufficient for implementing dynamic ad insertion. Unfortunately they create an overhead of unnecessary MPD traffic ad breaks are rare events, while MPD
- updates need to be frequent enough if a cue message is expected to arrive only several seconds
- before the splice point. Use of HTTP conditional GET requests (i.e., allowing the server to respond
- with "304 Not Modified" if MPD is unchanged) is helpful in reducing this overhead, but asynchro-
- 14 nous MPD updates avoid this overhead entirely.
- DASH events with scheme "urn:mpeg:dash:event:2013" are used to trigger asynchro-
- 16 nous MPD updates.
- 17 The simple mapping of live inband cues in live content into DASH events is translating a single
- cue into an MPD Validity expiration event (which will cause an MPD update prior to the splice
- 19 time). MPD Validity expiration events need to be sent early enough to allow the client request a
- 20 new MPD, resolve XLink (which may entail communication between the resolver and ADS), and,
- 21 finally, download the first segment of the upcoming ad in time to prevent disruption of service at
- the splice point.
- 23 If several 'emsg' boxes are present in a segment and one of them is the MPD Validity Expiration
- event, 'emsg' carrying it shall always appear first.

25 **5.3.2.4.** MPD events

- In addition to tracking events (ad starts, quartile tracking, etc.) the server may also need to signal
- 27 additional metadata to the video application. For example, an ad unit may contain not only inline
- 28 linear ad content (that is to be played before, during, or after the main presentation), it may also
- contain a companion display ad that is to be shown at the same time as the video ad. It is important

- 1 that the server be able to signal both the presence of the companion ad and the additional tracking
- 2 and click-through metadata associated with the companion.
- 3 With that said, there is no need to have a generic DASH client implement this functionality it is
- 4 enough to provide opaque information that the client would pass to an external module. Event
- 5 @schemeIdUri provides us with such addressing functionality, while MPD events allow us to
- 6 put opaque payloads into the MPD.

5.3.3. Workflows

8 **5.3.3.1.** General

7

22 23 24

25

26

27

- 9 In the workflows below we assume that our inputs are MPEG-2 transport streams with embedded
- 10 SCTE 35 cue messages [57]. In our opinion this will be a frequently encountered deployment,
- 11 however any other in-band or out-of-band method of getting cue messages and any other input
- 12 format lend themselves into the same model.

13 **5.3.3.2.** Linear

- 14 A real-time MPEG-2 TS feed arrives at both packager and MPD generator. While real-time mul-
- 15 ticast feeds are a very frequently encountered case, the same workflow can apply to cases such as
- ad replacement in a pre-recorded content (e.g., in time-shifting or PVR scenarios).
- 17 MPD generator generates dynamic MPDs. Packager creates DASH segments out of the arriving
- 18 feed and writes them into the origin server. Client periodically requests the MPDs so that it has
- 19 enough time to transition seamlessly into the ad period.
- 20 Packager and MPD generator may be tightly coupled (e.g. co-located on the same physical ma-
- 21 chine), or loosely coupled as they both are synchronized only to the clock of the feed.

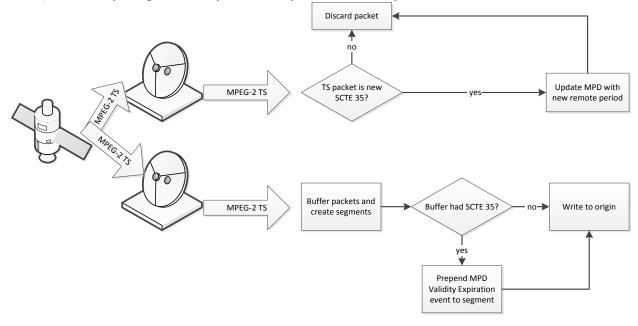


Figure 10: Live Workflow

5.3.3.2.1. Cue Interpretation by the MPD generator

When an SCTE 35 cue message indicating an upcoming splice point is encountered by the MPD generator, the latter creates a new MPD for the same program, adding a remote period to it.

- 1 The Period@start attribute of the inserted period has splice time() translated into the
- 2 presentation timeline. Parameters derived from the cue message are inserted into the Pe-
- 3 **riod**@xlink:href attribute of the inserted period. Examples below show architectures that
- 4 allow finer targeting.

5 5.3.3.2.1.1. Example 1: Immediate ad decision

- 6 MPD generator keeps an up-to-date template of an MPD. At each cue message arrival, the gener-
- 7 ator updates its template. At each MPD request, the generator customizes the request based on the
- 8 information known to it about the requesting client. The generator contacts ad decision server and
- 9 produces one or more non-remote ad periods. In this case XLink is not needed.

10 5.3.3.2.1.2. Example 2: Stateful cue translation

- MPD generator keeps an up-to-date template of an MPD. At each cue message arrival, the gener-
- 12 ator updates its template. At each MPD request, the generator customizes the request based on the
- information known to it about the requesting client.
- 14 The operator targets separately male and female audiences. Hence, the generator derives this from
- the information it has regarding the requesting client (see 5.1.3.6), and inserts an XLink URL with
- the query parameter ?gender=male for male viewers, and ?gender=female for the female
- 17 viewers.
- 18 Note that this example also showcases poor privacy practices would such approach be imple-
- mented, both parameter name and value should be encrypted or TLS-based communication should
- 20 be used

27

28

29

21 5.3.3.2.1.3. Example 3: Stateless cue translation

- 22 At cue message arrival, the MPD generator extracts the entire SCTE 35 splice info sec-
- 23 tion (starting at the table id and ending with the CRC 32) into a buffer. The buffer is then
- 24 encoded into URL-safe base64url format according to RFC 4648 [63], and inserted into the XLink
- 25 URL of a new remote Period element. splice_time is translated into Period@start attrib-
- 26 ute. The new MPD is pushed to the origin.
 - Note: this example is a straightforward port of the technique defined for SCTE 67 [58], but uses base64url and not base64 encoding as the section is included in a URI.

5.3.3.2.2. Cue Interpretation by the packager

- 30 Cue interpretation by the packager is optional and is an optimization, rather than core functionality.
- 31 On reception of an SCTE 35 cue message signaling an upcoming splice, an `emsg` with MPD
- 32 Validity Expiration event is inserted into the first available segment. This event triggers an MPD
- 33 update, and not an ad decision, hence the sum of the earliest presentation time of the 'emsg'-
- bearing segment and the `emsg`.presentation time delta should be sufficiently ear-
- 35 lier than the splice time. This provides the client with sufficient time to both fetch the MPD and
- 36 resolve XLink.
- 37 splice time () of the cue message is translated into the media timeline, and last segment be-
- fore the splice point is identified. If needed, the packager can also finish the segment at the splice
- 39 point and thus having a segment shorter than its target duration.

40 5.3.3.2.3. Multiple cue messages

- There is a practice of sending several SCTE 35 cue messages for the same splice point (e.g., the
- 42 first message announces a splice in 6 seconds, the second arrives 2 seconds later and warns about

- 1 the same splice in 4 seconds, etc.). Both the packager and the MPD generator react on the same
- 2 first message (the 6-sec warning in the example above), and do nothing about the following mes-
- 3 sages.

4 5.3.3.2.4. Cancelation

- 5 It is possible that the upcoming (and announced) insertion will be canceled (e.g., ad break needed
- 6 to be postponed due to overtime). Cancelation is announced in a SCTE 35 cue message.
- When cancelation is announced, the packager will insert the corresponding 'emsg' event and the
- 8 MPD generator will create a newer version of the MPD that does not contain the inserted period
- 9 or sets its duration to zero. This implementation maintains a simpler less-coupled server side sys-
- tem at the price of an increase in traffic.

11 **5.3.3.2.5.** Early termination

- It is also possible that a planned ad break will need to be cut short e.g., an ad will be cut short
- and there will be a switch to breaking news. The DASH translation of this would be creating an
- 14 'emsg' at the packager and updating the MPD appropriately. Treatment of early termination here
- would be same as treatment of a switch from main content to an ad break.
- 16 It is easier to manipulate durations when Period@duration is absent and only Pe-
- 17 **riod**@start is used this way attributes already known to the DASH client don't change.

18 5.3.3.2.6. Informational cue messages

- 19 SCTE 35 can be used for purposes unrelated to signaling of placement opportunities. Examples
- of such use are content identification and time-of-day signaling. Triggering MPD validity expira-
- 21 tion and possibly XLink resolution in this case may be an overreaction.

22 **5.3.3.2.7.** Ad decision

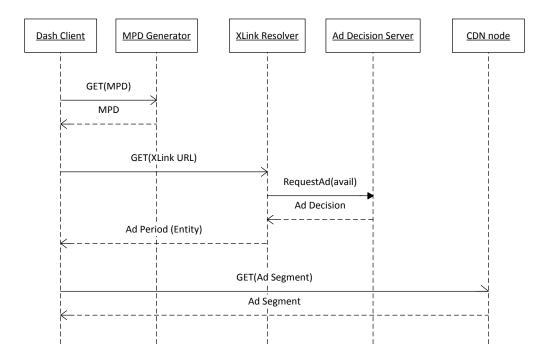


Figure 11: Ad Decision

- 2 A client will attempt to dereference a remote period element by issuing an HTTP GET for the URL
- 3 that appears in Period@xlink:href. The HTTP server responding to this request (XLink re-
- 4 solver) will contact the ad decision service, possibly passing it parameters known from the request
- 5 URL and from client information available to it from the connection context. In case described in
- 6 5.3.3.2.1.3, the XLink resolver has access to a complete SCTE 35 message that triggered the splice.
- 7 The ad decision service response identifies the content that needs to be presented, and given this
- 8 information the XLink resolver can generate one or more Period elements that would be then re-
- 9 turned to the requesting DASH client.
- 10 A possible optimization is that resolved periods are cached e.g. in case of 5.3.3.2.1.1 "male" and
- "female" versions of the content are only generated once in T seconds, with HTTP caching used
- to expire the cached periods after T seconds.

13 **5.3.3.3. On Demand**

1

- In a VoD scenario, cue locations are known ahead of time. They may be available multiplexed into
- the mezzanine file as SCTE 35 or SCTE 104, or may be provided via an out-of-band EDL.
- 16 In VoD workflows both cue locations and break durations are known, hence there is no need for a
- dynamic MPD. Thus cue interpretation (which is same as in 5.3.3.2) can occur only once and result
- in a static MPD that contains all remote elements with all Period elements having Pe-
- 19 **riod**@start attribute present in the MPD.
- 20 In elastic workflows ad durations are unknown, thus despite our knowledge of cue locations within
- 21 the main content it is impossible to build a complete presentation timeline. **Period**@duration
- 22 needs to be used. Remote periods should be dereferenced only when needed for playout. In case
- of a "jump" random access into an arbitrary point in the asset it is a better practice not to
- 24 dereference Period elements when it is possible to determine the period from which the playout
- 25 starts using **Period**@duration and asset identifiers. The functionality described in 5.3.3.2 is
- sufficient to address on-demand cases, with the only difference that a client should be able to
- handle zero-duration periods that are a result of avails that are not taken.

28 **5.3.3.4.** Capture to VoD

- 29 Capture to VoD use case is a hybrid between pure linear and on demand scenarios: linear content
- is recorded as it is broadcast, and is then accessible on demand. A typical requirement is to have
- 31 the content available with the original ad for some time, after which ads can be replaced
- 32 There are two possible ways of implementing the capture-to-VoD workflow.
- 33 The simplest is treating capture-to-VoD content as plain VoD, and having the replacement policy
- 34 implemented on the XLink resolver side. This way the same Period element(s) will be always
- returned to the same requester within the window where ad replacement is disallowed; while after
- this window the behavior will be same as for any on-demand content. An alternative implementa-
- 37 tion is described in 5.3.3.5 below.

38 5.3.3.5. Slates and ad replacement

- A content provider (e.g., OTT) provides content with ad breaks filled with its own ads. An ISP is
- allowed to replace some of these with their own ads. Conceptually there is content with slates in
- 41 place of ads, but all slates can be shown and only some can be replaced.

- An ad break with a slate can be implemented as a valid in-MPD Period element that also has XLink
- 2 attributes. If a slate is replaceable, XLink resolution will result in new Period element(s), if not –
- 3 the slate is played out.

4 5.3.3.6. Blackouts and Alternative content

- 5 In many cases broadcast content cannot be shown to a part of the audience due to contractual
- 6 limitations (e.g., viewers located close to an MLB game will not be allowed to watch it, and will
- 7 be shown some alternative content). While unrelated to ad insertion per se, this use case can be
- 8 solved using the same "default content" approach, where the in-MPD content is the game and the
- 9 alternative content will be returned by the XLink resolver if the latter determines (in some unspec-
- ified way) that the requester is in the blackout zone.

11 5.3.3.7. Tracking and reporting

- 12 A Period, either local or a remote entity, may contain an EventStream element with an event con-
- taining IAB VAST 3.0 Ad element [56]. DASH client does not need to parse the information and
- act accordingly if there is a listener to events of this type, this listener can use the VAST 3.0 Ad
- element to implement reporting, tracking and companion ads. The processing done by this listener
- does not have any influence on the DASH client, and same content would be presented to both
- 17 "vanilla" DASH client and the player in which a VAST module registers with a DASH client a
- listener to the VAST 3.0 events. VAST 3.0 response can be carried in an **Event** element where
- 18 distener to the VAST 3.0 events. VAST 3.0 response can be carried in an **Event** element where
- 19 EventStream@schemeIdUri value is http://dashif.org/identifi-
- 20 ers/vast30.
- 21 An alternative implementation uses DASH Callback events to point to the same tracking URLs.
- While DASH specification permits both inband and MPD Callback events, inband callback events
- shall not be used.

24 **5.3.4.** Examples

25 5.3.4.1. MPD with mid-roll ad breaks and default content

- In this example, a movie ("Top Gun") is shown on a linear channel and has two mid-roll ad breaks.
- Both breaks have default content that will be played if the XLink resolver chooses not to return
- 28 new Period element(s) or fails.
- 29 In case of the first ad break, SCTE 35 cue message is passed completely to the XLink resolver,
- 30 together with the corresponding presentation time.
- In case of the second ad break, proprietary parameters u and z describe the main content and the
- 32 publishing site.

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<MPD xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
    xmlns="urn:mpeg:dash:schema:mpd:2011"
    xsi:schemaLocation="urn:mpeg:dash:schema:mpd:2011 DASH-MPD.xsd"
    type="dynamic"
    minimumUpdatePeriod="PT2S"
    timeShiftBufferDepth="PT600S"
    minBufferTime="PT2S"
    profiles="urn:mpeg:dash:profile:isoff-live:2011"
    availabilityStartTime="2012-12-25T15:17:50">
    <BaseURL>http://cdn1.example.com/</BaseURL>
    <BaseURL>http://cdn2.example.com/</BaseURL>
```

```
<!-- Movie -->
    <Period start="PT0.00S" duration="PT600.6S" id="movie period #1">
        <AssetIdentifier schemeIdUri="urn:org:dashif:asset-id:2013"</pre>
            value="md:cid:EIDR:10.5240%2f0EFB-02CD-126E-8092-1E49-W"/>
        <AdaptationSet mimeType="video/mp4" codecs="avc1.640828"</pre>
            frameRate="24000/1001" segmentAlignment="true" startWithSAP="1">
            <BaseURL>video 1/</BaseURL>
            <SegmentTemplate timescale="90000" initialization="$Band-</pre>
width%/init.mp4v"
                media="$Bandwidth$/$Number%05d$.mp4v"/>
            <Representation id="v0" width="320" height="240" bandwidth="250000"/>
            <Representation id="v1" width="640" height="480" bandwidth="500000"/>
            <Representation id="v2" width="960" height="720" bandwidth="1000000"/>
        </AdaptationSet>
    </Period>
    <!-- Mid-roll advertisement, passing base64url-coded SCTE 35 to XLink resolver -
    <Period duration="PT60.6S" id="ad break #1"</pre>
            xlink:href="https://adserv.com/avail.mpd?scte35-time=PT600.6S&
                 scte35-cue=DAIAAAAAAAAAAAAAA IOVniQAQAqBDVUVJQAAAAH+cAAAAAA&3D%3D"
            xlink:actuate="onRequest" >
        <!-- Default content, replaced by elements from remote entity -->
        <AdaptationSet mimeType="video/mp4" codecs="avc1.640828"</pre>
                       frameRate="30000/1001"
            segmentAlignment="true" startWithSAP="1">
            <BaseURL availabilityTimeOffset="INF">default ad//BaseURL>
            <SegmentTemplate timescale="90000" initialization="$Band-</pre>
width%/init.mp4v"
                media="$Bandwidth%/$Time$.mp4v"/>
            <Representation id="v0" width="320" height="240" bandwidth="250000"/>
            <Representation id="v1" width="640" height="480" bandwidth="500000"/>
            <Representation id="v2" width="960" height="720" bandwidth="1000000"/>
        </AdaptationSet>
    </Period>
    <!-Movie, cont'd -->
    <Period duration="PT600.6S" id="movie period #2">
        <AssetIdentifier schemeIdUri="urn:org:dashif:asset-id:2013"</pre>
            value="md:cid:EIDR:10.5240%2f0EFB-02CD-126E-8092-1E49-W"/>
        <AdaptationSet mimeType="video/mp4" codecs="avc1.640828"</pre>
                        frameRate="24000/1001"
            segmentAlignment="true" startWithSAP="1">
            <BaseURL>video 2/</BaseURL>
            <SegmentTemplate timescale="90000" initialization="$Band-</pre>
width%/init.mp4v"
                media="$Bandwidth%/$Time$.mp4v"/>
            <Representation id="v0" width="320" height="240" bandwidth="250000"/>
            <Representation id="v1" width="640" height="480" bandwidth="500000"/>
            <Representation id="v2" width="960" height="720" bandwidth="1000000"/>
        </AdaptationSet>
    </Period>
    <!-- Mid-roll advertisement, using proprietary parameters -->
    <Period duration="PT60.6S" id="ad break #2"</pre>
        xlink:href="https://adserv.com/avail.mpd?u=0EFB-02CD-126E-8092-1E49-
W&z=spam"
        xlink:actuate="onRequest" >
        <!-- Default content, replaced by elements from remote entity -->
        <AdaptationSet mimeType="video/mp4" codecs="avc1.640828"</pre>
```

Figure 12: Example of MPD for "Top Gun" movie

5.4. App-based Architecture

5.4.1. Introduction

1

2

3 4

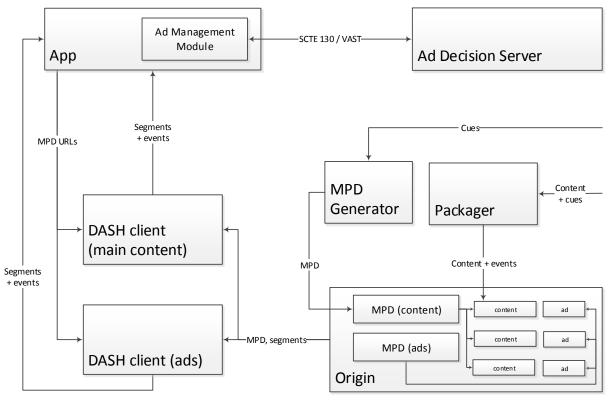


Figure 13: App-based architecture

Inputs in this use case are same as the ones described in sec. 5.3. At the packaging stage, cues are translated into a format readable by the app or/and DASH client and are embedded into media segments or/and into the manifest

- Ad management module is located at the client side. The DASH client receives manifest and segments, with cues embedded in either one of them or in both.
- 12 Cue data is passed to the ad management module, which contacts the ad decision service and re-13 ceives information on content to be played. This results in an MPD for an inserted content and a 14 splice time at which presentation of main content is paused and presentation of the inserted content

15 starts.

5 6

7

8

9

10

- 1 Note that this architecture does not assume multiple decoders with careful conditioning it is
- 2 possible to do traditional splicing where inserted content is passed to the same decoder. In this case
- 3 it is necessary to keep a player state and be able to initialize a player into this state.

4 5.4.2. Mapping to DASH

- 5 This section details mapping of elements of the reference architecture into DASH concepts per the
- 6 2nd edition of the specification (i.e., ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014).
- 7 **5.4.2.1. MPD**
- 8 Each ad decision results in a separate MPD. A single MPD contains either main content or inserted
- 9 content; existence of multiple periods or/and remote periods is possible but not essential.
- 10 **5.4.2.2. SCTE 35 events**
- 11 **5.4.2.2.1.** General

- 12 Cue messages are mapped into DASH events, using inband 'emsg' boxes and/or in-MPD events.
- Note that SCTE 35 cue message may not be sufficient by itself.
- 14 The examples below show use of SCTE 35 in user-defined events, and presentation time indicates
- the timing in within the Period.
- Figure 14 below shows the content of an 'emsg' box at the beginning of a segment with earliest
- presentation time T. There is a 6-sec warning of an upcoming splice delta to splice time is indi-
- cated as 6 seconds and duration is given as 1 minute. This means that an ad will start playing at
- 19 time T + 6 till T + 66. This example follows a practice defined in SCTE DVS 1208.

```
scheme_id_uri="urn:scte:scte35:2013:xml"
                              value=1001
                            timescale=90000
                     presentation_time_delta=540000
                            duration=5400000
                                  0=bi
                            message_data[]=
<SpliceInfoSection ptsAdjustment="0" scte35:tier="22">
  <SpliceInsert</pre>
       spliceEventId="111" spliceEventCancelIndicator="false"
       outOfNetworkIndicator="true" uniqueProgramId="65535"
       availNum="1" availsExpected="2" spliceImmediateFlag="false">
       <Program><SpliceTime ptsTime="122342"/></Program>
       <BreakDuration autoReturn="false" duration="5400000"/>
  </SpliceInsert>
  <AvailDescriptor scte35:providerAvailId="332"/>
</SpliceInfoSection>
```

Figure 14 Inband carriage of SCTE 35 cue message

3 4 5

6

7

8

9

10

11 12 Figure 15 below shows the same example with an in-MPD SCTE35 cue message. The difference is in the in-MPD event the splice time is relative to the Period start, rather than to the start of the event-carrying segment. This figure shows a one-minute ad break 10 minutes into the period.

Figure 15: In-MPD carriage of SCTE 35 cue message

Note: for brevity purposes SCTE 35 2014 allows use of base64-encoded section in **Signal.Bi-nary** element as an alternative to carriage of a completely parsed cue message.

Normative definitions of carriage of SCTE 35 cue messages are in ANSI/SCTE 214-1 sec 6.8.4 (MPD) and ANSI/SCTE 214-3 sec 8.3.3.

- 1 5.4.2.3. Asset Identifiers
- 2 See sec. 5.3.2.2 for details.
- 3 **5.4.3.** Workflows
- 4 5.4.3.1. Linear

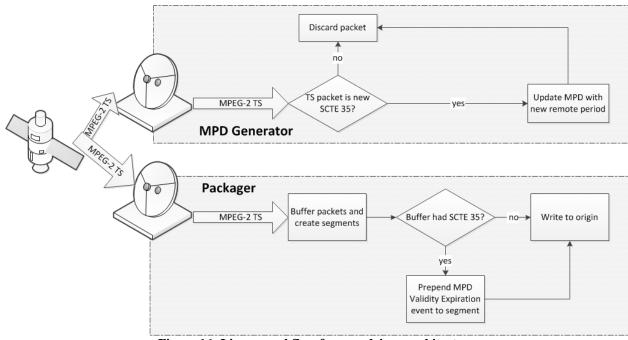


Figure 16: Linear workflow for app-driven architecture

A real-time MPEG-2 TS feed arrives at a packager. While real-time multicast feeds are a very frequently encountered case, the same workflow can apply to cases such as ad replacement in a pre-recorded content (e.g., in time-shifting or PVR scenarios).

- 10 Packager creates DASH segments out of the arriving feed and writes them into the origin server.
- 11 The packager translates SCTE 35 cue messages into inband DASH events, which are inserted into
- media segments.

56

7

8

- MPD generator is unaware of ad insertion functionality and the packager does the translation of
- 14 SCTE 35 cue messages into inband user-defined DASH events. On reception of an SCTE 35 cue
- message signaling an upcoming splice, a `emsg` with a translation of the cue message in its
- 16 `emsg`.message data[] field is inserted into the most recent Segment. This event triggers
- 17 client interaction with an ad decision server, hence the sum of the earliest presentation time of the
- 18 `emsg`-bearing segment and the `emsg`.presentation time delta should be a trans-
- 19 lation of splice time () into the media timeline.
- 20 An alternative implementation which is more compatible with server-based architecture in section
- 5.3, an MPD generator can generate separate MPDs for both server-based and app-based architec-
- tures creating remote periods for server-based and in-MPD SCTE 35 events for app-based archi-
- 23 tectures, while a packager can insert inband MPD validity expiration events.
- A DASH client will pass the event to the app controlling it (e.g., via a callback registered by the
- 25 app). The app will interpret the event and communicate with the ad decision server using some
- interface (e.g., VAST). This interface is out of the scope of this document.

- 1 The communication with ad decision service will result in an MPD URL. An app will pause the
- 2 presentation of the main content and start presentation of the inserted content. After presenting the
- 3 inserted content the client will resume presentation of the main content. This assumes either proper
- 4 conditioning of the main and inserted content or existence of separate client and decoder for in-
- 5 serted content. The way pause/resume is implemented is internal to the API of the DASH client.
- 6 Interoperability may be achieved by using the DASH MPD fragment interface, see ISO/IEC
- 7 23009-1 [4], Annex C.4.

8 **5.4.3.2. On Demand**

- 9 As in the server-based case, functionality defined for the live case is sufficient. Moreover, the fact
- that that app-based implementation relies heavily on app's ability to pause and resume the DASH
- client, support for elastic workflows is provided out of the box.
- 12 In the on demand case, as cue locations are well-known, it is advantageous to provide a static MPD
- with SCTE 35 events than run a dynamic service that relies on inband events.

5.5. Extensions for ad insertion

15 **5.5.1.** Asset Identifiers

- 16 AssetIdentifier descriptor shall be used for distinguishing parts of the same asset within a
- multi-period MPD, hence it shall be used for main content.
- In order to enable better tracking and reporting, unique IDs should be used for different assets.
- 19 In the absence of other asset identifier schemes, a DASH-IF defined scheme may be used with the
- value of @schemeIdUri set to "urn:org:dashif:asset-id:2014". If used, the value
- of @value attribute descriptor shall be a MovieLabs ContentID URN ([61], 2.2.1) for the content.
- 22 It shall be the same for all parts of an asset. Preferred schemes are EIDR (main content) and Ad-
- 23 ID (advertising).
- 24 If a Period has one-off semantics (i.e., an asset is completely contained in a single period, and its
- continuation is not expected in the future), the author shall not use asset identifier on these assets.
- Periods that do not contain non-remote **AdaptationSet** elements, as well as zero-length peri-
- ods shall not contain the **AssetIdentifier** descriptor.

28 **5.5.2.** Remote Periods

- 29 An MPD may contain remote periods, some of which may have default content. Some of which
- are resolved into multiple Period elements.
- 31 After dereferencing MPD may contain zero-length periods or/and remote Periods.
- 32 In case of Period@xlink:actuate="onRequest", MPD update and XLink resolution
- should be done sufficiently early to ensure that there are no artefacts due to insufficient time given
- 34 to download the inserted content.
- 35 **Period**@xlink:actuate="onRequest" shall not be used if MPD@type ="dynamic"

36 **5.5.3.** User-defined events

37 **5.5.3.1.** Cue message

- Cue messages used in app-driven architecture shall be SCTE 35 events [57]. SCTE 35 event car-
- riage is defined in ANSI/SCTE 214-1 (MPD) and ANSI/SCTE 214-3 (inband). For MPD events,
- 40 the XML schema is defined in SCTE 35 2014 [57] and allows either XML representation or con-
- 41 cise base64-coded representation.

NOTE: PTS offset appearing in SCTE 35 shall be ignored, and only DASH event timing mechanism may be used to determine splice points.

3 **5.5.3.2.** Reporting

11

12

13 14

15 16

17

18

19

20

24

25

2627

- 4 MPD events with embedded IAB VAST 3.0 [56] response may be used for reporting purposes.
- 5 If only time-based reporting is required (e.g., reporting at start, completion, and quartiles), use of
- 6 DASH callback event may be a simpler native way of implementing tracking. Callback events are
- 7 defined in ISO/IEC 23009-1:2014 AMD3 [5].

8 5.5.3.3. Ad Insertion Event Streams

- 9 Recommended Event Stream schemes along with their scheme identifier for app-driven ad inser-10 tion are:
 - 1. "urn:scte:scte35:2013:bin" for inband SCTE 35 events containing a complete SCTE 35 section in binary form, as defined in ANSI/SCTE 214-3.
 - 2. "urn:scte:scte35:2014:xml+bin" for SCTE 35 MPD events containing only base64 cue message representation, as defined in ANSI/SCTE 214-1.

NOTE: the content of Event element is an XML representation of the complete SCTE 35 cue message, that contains Signal.Binary element rather than the Signal.SpliceInfoSection element, both defined in SCTE 35 2014.

- 3. "http://dashif.org/identifiers/vast30" for MPD events containing VAST3.0 responses [56].
- 4. urn:mpeg:dash:event:callback:2015 for DASH callback events.

21 **5.6.** Interoperability Aspects

22 **5.6.1.** Server-based Ad insertion

- 23 For server-based ad insertion, the following aspects needs to be taken into account:
 - Service offerings claiming conformance to server-based ad insertion shall follow the requirements and guidelines for service offerings in sections 5.3.2, 5.5.1, and 5.5.2..
 - Clients claiming conformance to server-based ad insertion shall follow shall follow the requirements and guidelines for clients in section 5.3.2, 5.5.1, and 5.5.2.

28 **5.6.2. App-based Ad Insertion**

- 29 For app-based ad insertion, the logic for ad insertion is outside the scope of the DASH client. The
- 30 tools defined in section 5.4 and 5.5 may be used to create an interoperable system that includes
- 31 DASH-based delivery and ad insertion logic.

6. Media Coding Technologies

33 **6.1. Introduction**

- 34 In addition to DASH-specific constraints, DASH-IF IOPs also adds restrictions on media codecs
- and other technologies. This section provides an overview on technologies for different media
- 36 components and how they fit into the DASH-related aspects of DASH-IF IOPs.

6.2. Video

2 **6.2.1.** General

- 3 The codec considered for basic video support up to 1280 x 720p at 30 fps is H.264 (AVC) Pro-
- 4 gressive High Profile Level 3.1 decoder [11]. This choice is based on the tradeoff between content
- 5 availability, support in existing devices and compression efficiency.
- 6 Further, it is recognized that certain clients may only be capable to operate with H.264/AVC "Pro-
- 7 gressive" Main Profile Level 3.0 and therefore content authors may provide and signal a specific
- 8 subset of DASH-IF IOP.
- 9 Notes

10

11

12

13

14

15 16

29

30

31

32

33

34

35

37

40

41

42

43

1

- H.264 (AVC) Progressive High Profile Level 3.1 decoder [11] can also decode any content that conforms to
 - o H.264 (AVC) Constrained Baseline Profile up to Level 3.1
 - o H.264 (AVC) "Progressive" Main Profile up to Level 3.1.
- H.264 (AVC) H.264/AVC "Progressive" Main Profile Level 3.0 decoder [11] can also decode any content that conforms to H.264 (AVC) Constrained Baseline Profile up to Level 3.0
- Further, the choice for HD extensions up to 1920 x 1080p and 30 fps is H.264 (AVC) Progressive High Profile Level 4.0 decoder [11].
- The High Efficiency Video Coding (HEVC) resulted from a joint video coding standardization project of the ITU-T Video Coding Experts Group (ITU-T Q.6/SG 16) and ISO/IEC Moving Pic-
- 21 ture Experts Group (ISO/IEC JTC 1/SC 29/WG 11). The final specification is available here [22].
- Additional background information may be found at http://hevc.info.
- 23 The DASH-IF is interested in providing Interoperability Points and Extensions for established co-
- 24 dec configurations. It is not the intent of the DASH-IF to define typically deployed HEVC pro-
- 25 files/levels or the associated source formats. However, at the same time it is considered to provide
- implementation guidelines supported by test material for DASH-based delivery as soon as the industry has converged to profile/level combinations in order to support a dedicated format. For
- 28 this version of this document the following is considered:
 - For HEVC-based video, it is expected that the minimum supported format is 720p. The codec considered to support up to 1280 x 720p at 30 fps is HEVC Main Profile Main Tier Level 3.1 [22].
 - The choice for 8-bit HD extensions based on HEVC to support up to 2048 x 1080 and 60 fps is HEVC Main Profile Main Tier Level 4.1 [22].
 - The choice for 10-bit HD extensions based on HEVC to support up to 2048 x 1080 and 60 fps and 10 bit frame depth is HEVC Main10 Profile Main Tier Level 4.1 [22].
- 36 Other profile/level combinations will be considered in updated versions of this document.

6.2.2. DASH-specific aspects for H.264/AVC video

- For the integration of the above-referred codecs in the context of DASH, the following applies for H.264 (AVC):
 - The encapsulation of H.264/MPEG-4 AVC video data is based on the ISO BMFF as defined in ISO/IEC 14496-15 [12].
 - Clients shall to support H.264/AVC sample entries when SPS/PPS is provided in the Initialization Segment only according to ISO/IEC 14496-15, [12], i.e. sample entry 'avc1'.

- Service offerings using H.264/AVC may use sample entry 'avc1' or 'avc3'.
- SAP types 1 and 2 correspond to IDR-frames in [11].
- The signaling of the different video codec profile and levels for the codecs parameters according to RFC6381 [13] is documented in Table 17. Note that any of the codecs present in Table 17 conforms to the profile level combination that is supported in DASH-AVC/264. Other codecs strings may be used and conform as well.
- Additional constraints within one Adaptation Set are provided in section 6.2.5. Note: For a detailed description on how to derive the signaling for the codec profile for H.264/AVC, please refer to DVB DASH, section 5.1.3.

Table 17 H.264 (AVC) Codecs parameter according to RFC6381 [13]

Profile	Le vel	Codec Parameter
H.264 (AVC) "Progressive" Main Profile	3.0	avc[1,3].4DY01E
H.264 (AVC) Progressive High Profile	3.1 4.0	avc[1,3].64Y01F avc[1,3].64Y028

14 15

16

17 18

19

20

21

22

6.2.3. DASH-specific aspects for H.265/HEVC video

- For the integration in the context of DASH, the following applies for HEVC
 - The encapsulation of HEVC video data in ISO BMFF is defined in ISO/IEC 14496-15 [12]. Clients shall support both sample entries 'using 'hvc1' and 'hev1', i.e., inband Storage for VPS/SPS/PPS.
 - Additional constraints within one Adaptation Set are provided in section 6.2.5.
 - For the signaling of HEVC IRAP Pictures in the ISOBMFF and in DASH, in particular the use of the sync sample table and of the SAP sample group, please refer to Table 18.

Table 18 Signaling of HEVC IRAP Pictures in the ISOBMFF and in DASH

NAL Unit Type	ISOBMFF sync status	DASH SAP type
IDR_N_LP	true	1
IDR_W_RADL	true	2 (if the IRAP has associated RADL pictures) 1 (if the IRAP has no associated RADL pictures)
BLA_N_LP	true	1
BLA_W_RADL	true	2 (if the IRAP has associated RADL pictures) 1 (if the IRAP has no associated RADL pictures)
BLA_W_LP	false	3 (if the IRAP has associated RASL pictures)
	true	2 (if the IRAP has no associated RASL pictures but has associated RADL pictures)
	true	1 (if the IRAP has no associated leading pictures)
CRA	false	3 (if the IRAP has associated RASL pictures)

true	2 (if the IRAP has no associated RASL pictures but has associated RADL pictures)
true	1 (if the IRAP has no associated leading pictures)

In the above table, when there are multiple possible values for a given NAL Unit Type, if the entity creating the signaling is not able to determine correctly which signaling to use, it shall use the values in the first row of this table associated to the NAL Unit Type.

• The signaling of the different video codec profile and levels for the codecs parameters is according to ISO/IEC 14496-15 [12] Annex E. Note that any of the codecs present in Table 1 conforms to the profile level combination that is supported in DASH-HEVC. NOTE: For a detailed description on how to derive the signaling for the codec profile for H.264/AVC, please refer to DVB DASH, section 5.2.2.

Table 19 Codecs parameter according to ISO/IEC 14496-15 [12]

Profile	Level	Tier	Codec Parameter
HEVC Main	3.1	Main	hev1.1.2.L93.B0
			hvc1.1.2.L93.B0
	4.1	Main	hev1.1.2.L123.B0
			hvc1.12.L123.B0
HEVC Main-10	4.1	Main	hev1.2.4.L123.B0
			hvc1.2.4.L123.B0

6.2.4. Video Metadata

9 The provisioning of video metadata in the MPD is discussed in section 3.2.4.

6.2.5. Adaptation Sets Constraints

6.2.5.1. General

Video Adaptation Sets shall contain Representations that are alternative encodings of the same source content. Video Adaptation Sets may contain Representations encoded at lower resolutions that are exactly divisible subsamples of the source image size. As a result, the cropped vertical and horizontal sample counts of all Representations can be scaled to a common display size without position shift or aspect ratio distortion that would be visible during adaptive switching. Subsample ratios must result in integer values for the resulting encoded sample counts (without rounding or truncation). The encoded sample count shall scale to the source video's exact active image aspect ratio when combined with the encoded sample aspect ratio value aspect_ratio_idc stored in the video Sequence Parameter Set NAL. Only the active video area shall be encoded so that devices can frame the height and width of the encoded video to the size and shape of their currently selected display area without extraneous padding in the decoded video, such as "letterbox bars" or "pillarbox bars".

All decoding parameter sets referenced by NALs in a Representation using 'avc1' or 'hvc1' sample description shall be indexed to that track's sample description table and decoder configuration record in the 'avcC' or 'hvcC' box contained in its Initialization Segment. All decoding parameter sets referenced by NALs in a Representation using 'avc3' or 'hev1' sample description shall be indexed to a Sequence Parameter NAL (SPS) and Picture Parameter NAL (PPS) stored prior to

the first video sample in that Media Segment. For 'avc3' and 'hev1' sample description Representations, the SPS and PPS NALs stored in 'avcC' or 'hvcC' in the Initialization Segment shall only be used for decoder and display initialization, and shall equal the highest Tier, Profile, and Level of any SPS in the Representation. SPS and PPS stored in each Segment shall be used for decoding and display scaling.

6 For all Representations within an Adaptation Set with the following parameters shall apply.

- All the Initialization Segments for Representations within an Adaptation Set shall have the same sample description codingname. For example the inclusion of 'avc1' and 'avc3' based Representations within an Adaptation Set or the inclusion 'avc1' and 'hev1' based Representations within an Adaptation Set is not permitted.
- All Representations shall have equal timescale values in all @timescale attributes and 'tkhd' timescale fields in Initialization Segments.
- If 'avc1' or 'hvc1' sample description is signaled in the **AdaptationSet**@codecs attribute, an edit list may be used to synchronize all Representations to the presentation timeline, and the edit offset value shall be equal for all Representations.
- Representations in one Adaptation Set shall not differ in any of the following parameters: Color Primaries, Transfer Characteristics and Matrix Coefficients. If Adaptation Sets differ in any of the above parameters, these parameters should be signaled on Adaptation Set level. If signaled, a Supplemental or Essential Property descriptor shall be used, with the @schemeIdURI set to urn:mpeg:mpegB:cicp:<Parameter> as defined in ISO/IEC 23001-8 [52] and <Parameter> one of the following: ColourPrimaries, TransferCharacteristics, Or MatrixCoefficients. The @value attribute shall be set as defined in ISO/IEC 23001-8 [52].

6.2.5.2. Bitstream Switching

For AVC and HEVC video data, if the @bitstreamswitching flag is set to true, then the following additional constraints shall apply:

- All Representations shall be encoded using 'avc3' sample description for AVC or 'hev1' for HEVC, and all IDR pictures shall be preceded by any SPS and PPS NAL decoding parameter referenced by a video NAL in that codec video sequence.
 - Note: NAL parameter indexes in a Media Segment are scoped to that Segment. NALs and indexes in the Initialization Segment may be different, and are only used for decoder initialization, not Segment decoding.
- All Representations within a video Adaptation Set shall include an Initialization Segment containing an 'avcc' or 'hvcc' Box containing a Decoder Configuration Record containing SPS and PPS NALs that equal the highest Tier, Profile, Level, vertical and horizontal sample count of any Media Segment in the Representation. HEVC Decoder Configuration Records shall also include a VPS NAL.
- The AdaptationSet@codecs attribute shall be present and equal the maximum profile and level of any Representation contained in the Adaptation Set.
- The **Representation**@codecs attribute may be present and in that case shall equal the maximum profile and level of any Segment in the Representation.
- Edit lists shall not be used to synchronize video to audio and presentation timelines.

• Video Media Segments shall set the first presented sample's composition time equal to the first decoded sample's decode time, which equals the baseMediaDecodeTime in the Track Fragment Decode Time Box ('tfdt').

3 4 5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

33

34

35

36

37

38

39

40

41 42

1

2

- Note: This requires the use of negative composition offsets in a v1 Track Run Box ('trun') for video samples, otherwise video sample reordering will result in a delay of video relative to audio.
- The @presentationTimeOffset attribute shall be sufficient to align audio video, subtitle, and presentation timelines at presentation a Period's presentation start time. Any edit lists present in Initialization Segments shall be ignored. It is strongly recommended that the Presentation Time Offset at the start of each Period coincide with the first frame of a Segment to improve decoding continuity at the start of Periods.

NOTE: An Adaptation Set with the attribute **AdaptationSet**@bitstreamSwitching="true" fulfills the requirements of the DVB DASH specification [45].

15 See section 7.7 for additional Adaptation Set constraints related to content protection.

16 **6.3.** Audio

17 **6.3.1.** General

- 18 Content offered according to DASH-IF IOP is expected to contain an audio component in most
- 19 cases. Therefore, clients consuming DASH-IF IOP-based content are expected to support stereo
- audio. Multichannel audio support and support for additional codecs is defined in extensions in
- 21 section 9 of this document.
- The codec for basic stereo audio support is MPEG-4 High Efficiency AAC v2 Profile, level 2 [14].
 Notes
 - HE-AACv2 is also standardized as Enhanced aacPlus in 3GPP TS 26.401 [16].
 - HE-AACv2 Profile decoder [11] can also decode any content that conforms to
 - o MPEG-4 AAC Profile [14]
 - o MPEG-4 HE-AAC Profile [14]

Therefore, Broadcasters and service providers encoding DASH-AVC/264 content are free to use any AAC version. It is expected that clients supporting the DASH-IF IOP interoperability point will be able to play AAC-LC, HE-AAC and HE-AACv2 encoded content.

For all HE-AAC and HE-AACv2 bitstreams, explicit backwards compatible signaling should be used to indicate the use of the SBR and PS coding tools.

Note: To conform to the DVB DASH profile [45], explicit backwards compatible signaling shall be used to indicate the use of the SBR and PS coding tools.

For advanced audio technologies, please refer to section 9.

6.3.2. DASH-specific aspects for HE-AACv2 audio

In the context of DASH, the following applies for the High Efficiency AAC v2 Profile

- The content should be prepared according to the MPEG-DASH Implementation Guidelines [9] to make sure each (Sub)Segment starts with a SAP of type 1.
- The signaling of MPEG-4 High Efficiency AAC v2 for the codecs parameters is according to IETF RFC6381 [13] and is documented in Table 20. Table 20 also provides information on the ISO BMFF encapsulation.

18

19 20

21

29

• For content with SBR, i.e. @codecs=mp4a.40.5 or @codecs=mp4a.40.29, @audioSamplingRate signals the resulting sampling rate after SBR is applied, e.g. 48 kHz even if the AAC-LC core operates at 24 kHz. For content with PS, i.e. @codecs=mp4a.40.29, AudioChannelConfiguration signals the resulting channel configuration after PS is applied, e.g. stereo even if the AAC-LC core operates at mono.

Table 20 HE-AACv2 Codecs parameter according to RFC6381 [13]

Codec	Codec Parame- ter	ISO BMFF Encapsulation	SAP type
MPEG-4 AAC Profile [14]	mp4a.40.2	ISO/IEC 14496-14 [15]	1
MPEG-4 HE- AAC Profile [14]	mp4a.40.5	ISO/IEC 14496-14 [15]	1
MPEG-4 HE- AAC v2 Profile	mp4a.40.29	ISO/IEC 14496-14 [15]	1
[14]			

- Note: Since both, HE-AAC and HE-AACv2 are based on AAC-LC, for the above-mentioned "Codec Parameter" the following is implied:
- 10 mp4a.40.5 = mp4a.40.2 + mp4a.40.5
 - mp4a.40.29 = mp4a.40.2 + mp4a.40.5 + mp4a.40.29

12 **6.3.3.** Audio Metadata

- 13 **6.3.3.1.** General
- 14 Metadata for audio services is defined in ISO/IEC 23009-1.
- 15 6.3.3.2. ISO/IEC 23009-1 audio data
- With respect to the audio metadata, the following elements and attributes from ISO/IEC 23009-1 are relevant:
 - the @audioSamplingRate attribute for signaling the sampling rate of the audio media component type in section 5.3.7 of ISO/IEC 23009-1
 - the **AudioChannelConfiguration** element for signaling audio channel configuration of the audio media component type.in section 5.3.7 of ISO/IEC 23009-1.

22 **6.4.** Auxiliary Components

- 23 **6.4.1. Introduction**
- 24 Beyond regular audio and video support, TV programs typically also require support for auxiliary
- 25 components such as subtitles and closed captioning, often due to regulatory requirements. DASH-
- 26 IF IOP provides tools to addresses these requirements.

27 **6.4.2.** Subtitles and Closed Captioning

- 28 Technologies for subtitles are as follows:
 - CEA-608/708 Digital Television (DTV) Closed Captioning [17]
- IMSC1 [64] conformant profiles of TTML, packaged as Segments conforming to MPEG-4, Part 30 [32], including subsets such as:

- o W3C TTML [19]
 - o SMPTE Timed Text [20] (including image-based subtitles and closed captioning)
 - o EBU-TT [23]
 - 3GPP Timed Text [18]
- Web VTT [21]

2

3

4

5

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

2425

2627

28

29

31

32

33

34

35

3637

38

39

40

41 42

43

44

- 6 For simple use cases, CEA-608/708 based signaling as defined in section 6.4.3 may be used.
- For any other use cases, IMSC1 [64] should be used as defined in section 6.4.4. It is expected that most subset profiles of IMSC1 would be reasonably decodable.
- TTML and WebVTT Media Segments shall be referenced by Representation elements in MPDs, downloaded, initialized, and synchronized for multimedia presentation the same as audio and video Segments.

 Note: DASH playback applications such as Web pages can download TTML or WebVTT text files, initialize

Note: DASH playback applications such as Web pages can download TTML or WebVTT text files, initialize renderers, and synchronize rendering and composition. This specification does not specify interoperable playback of these "sidecar" subtitle files in combination with a DASH audio visual presentation. However, section 6.4.5 provides guidelines on how to synchronize side car files at Period boundaries.

6.4.3. CEA-608/708 in SEI messages

6.4.3.1. Background

In order to provide the signaling of the presence of SEI-based data streams and closed captioning services on MPD level, descriptors on DASH level are defined. This section provides some background.

Note: This method is compatible with draft SCTE specification DVS 1208 and therefore SCTE URNs are used for the descriptor @schemeIdURI. In an updated version of this document more details on the exact relation to the SCTE specification will be provided.

The presence of captions and their carriage within the SEI message of a video track is defined in ANSI/SCTE 128-1 2013 [46], section 8.1 Encoding and transport of caption, active format description (AFD) and bar data.

Based on this it is enabled that a video track carries SEI message that carry CEA-608/708 CC. The SEI message payload_type=4 is used to indicates that Rec. ITU-T T.35 based SEI messages are in use.

In summary the following is included in ANSI/SCTE 128-1 2013 to signal CEA-608/708 CC:

- SEI payloadType is set to 4
- itu t t35 country code A fixed 8-bit field, the value of which shall be 0xB5.
- itu_t_35_provider_code A fixed 16-bit field registered by the ATSC. The value shall be 0x0031.
- user_identifier This is a 32 bit code that indicates the contents of the user_structure() and is 0x47413934 ("GA94").
 - user_structure() This is a variable length data structure ATSC1_data() defined in section 8.2 of ANSI/SCTE 128 2013-a.
 - user_data_type_code is set to 0x03 for indicating captioning data in the user_data_type_structure()
 - user_data_type_structure() is defined in section 8.2.2 of ANSI/SCTE 128-1 2013 for Closed Captioning and defines the details on how to encapsulate the captioning data.
- The semantics of relevant Caption Service Metadata is provided in CEA-708 [17], section 4.5:

- the total number of caption services (1-16) present over some transport-specific period.
- For each service:

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11 12

13

14

15 16

17

18

19

20

21

22

- The type of the service, i.e. being 608 or 708. According to CEA-708 [17], section 4.5, there shall be at most one CEA-608 data stream signaled. The CEA-608 datastream itself signals the individual CEA-608-E caption channels.
- When the type of the service is 708, then the following 708-related metadata should be conveyed:
 - SERVICE NUMBER: the service number as found on the 708 caption service block header (1-31). This field provides the linkage of the remaining metadata to a specific 708 caption service
 - LANGUAGE: the dominant language of the caption service, recommended to be encoded from ISO 639.2/B [48].
 - DISPLAY ASPECT RATIO {4:3, 16:9}: The display aspect ratio assumed by the caption authoring in formatting the caption windows and contents.
 - EASY READER: this metadata item, when present, indicates that the service contains text tailored to the needs of beginning readers.

6.4.3.2. MPD-based Signaling of SEI-based CEA-608/708 Closed Caption services

- This subsection provides methods MPD-based Signaling of SEI-based CEA-608/708 Closed Caption services, i.e.
 - The presence of one or several SEI-based closed caption services in a Representation.
 - The signaling of the relevant Caption Service Metadata as defined in CEA-708 [17], section 4.5.
- The descriptor mechanism in DASH is used for this purpose.
- 24 Signaling is provided by including Accessibility descriptors, one each for CEA 608 and
- 25 CEA 708 and is described in sections 6.4.3.3 and 6.4.3.4, respectively. The Accessibility
- descriptor is included for the AdaptationSet and all included Representations shall provide
- 27 equivalent captions.
- 28 The @value attribute of each descriptor can be either list of languages or a complete map of
- 29 services (or CC channels, in CEA-608 terminology). Listing languages without service or channel
- information is strongly discouraged if more than one caption service is present.
- 31 These definitions are equivalent to SCTE 214-1 [59].
- 32 6.4.3.3. Signaling CEA-608 caption service metadata
- 33 The Accessibility descriptor shall be provided with @schemeIdURI set to
- 34 urn:scte:dash:cc:cea-608:2015, and an optional @value attribute to describe the cap-
- 35 tions. If the @value attribute is not present, the Representation contains a CEA-608 based closed
- 36 captioning service.
- 37 If present, the @value attribute shall contain a description of caption service(s) provided in the
- 38 stream as a list of channel-language pairs. Alternatively, a simple list of language codes may be
- 39 provided, but this is strongly discouraged as it will not provide sufficient information to map the
- 40 language with the appropriate caption channel.
- 41 The @value syntax shall be as described in the ABNF below.

6.4.3.4. Signaling CEA-708 caption service metadata

- The Accessibility descriptor shall be provided with the @schemeIdURI set to urn:scte:dash:cc:cea-708:2015, and an optional @value attribute to describe the captions. If the @value attribute is not present, the Representation contains a CEA-708 based closed captioning service.
- If present, the @value shall contain the Caption Service Metadata as provided in CEA-708 [17], section 4.5 as a semicolon-separated string of service descriptions. Each service description is a list of colon-separated name-value pairs. Alternatively, a simple list of language codes may be provided, but this is strongly discouraged as it will not provide sufficient information to map the language with the appropriate caption service. The @value syntax shall be as described in the ABNF below.

```
16
     @value
                        = service *15 [";" service] / (language *15[";" language])
17
                        = service-number "=" param
     service
18
                        = (%d1 - %d63); decimal numbers 1 through 63
     service-number
19
                        = "lang" ":" language[", "easy-reader][", "aspect-ratio]
     param
20
                        = 3ALPHA; language code per ISO 639.2/B
     language
21
                        = "er" ":" BIT ; default value 0
     easv-reader
22
     wide-aspect-ratio = "war" ":" BIT ; default value 1 (16:9), 0 for 4:3
23
           NOTE: ALPHA and BIT are as defined by IETF RFC 5234 [50], Appendix B.1.
```

Based on the above ABNF, the following parameters are defined for signaling CEA-708 metadata:

	, 01	
Name	Value	Comments
lang	LANG	LANGUAGE code (see above)
war	Aspect ratio of the service.	The value may be either "4:3"
		(set to 0) or "16:9" (set to 1).
er	EasyReader presence ('1'	if If not present, 0 is assumed
	present, '0' if not).	

- Note that each of the service parameters (except for language) may be present or not present.
- 27 Default values can be assumed where specified.

6.4.3.5. Examples

5

24

25

28

29

30

31

32

33

34

35

36

37

38

39

40

41

Simple signaling of presence of CEA-608 based closed caption service (Note: Not signaling languages is a discouraged practice)

```
<Accessibility
    schemeIdUri="urn:scte:dash:cc:cea-608:2015"/>
```

Signaling of presence of CEA-608 closed caption service languages in English and German

```
<Accessibility
    schemeIdUri="urn:scte:dash:cc:cea-608:2015"
    value="eng;deu"/>
```

Signaling of presence of CEA-608 closed caption service in English and German, with channel assignments

```
<Accessibility
    schemeIdUri="urn:scte:dash:cc:cea-608:2015"
    value="CC1=eng;CC3=deu"/>
```

6.4.4. Timed Text (IMSC1)

W3C TTML [19] and its various profiles - W3C IMSC1 (text and image profiles) [64], SMPTE Timed Text [20], and EBU Timed Text [23] - provide a rich feature set for subtitles. Beyond basic subtitles and closed captioning, for example, graphics-based subtitles and closed captioning are also supported by IMSC1. Conversion of CEA-608 and CEA-708 into IMSC1 may be done according to SMPTE 2052-10 [30] and SMPTE-2052-11 [31], respectively. The Timed Text track shall conform to IMSC1 [64]. Note that by the choice of IMSC1 as the supported format at the client, other formats such as EBU TT [23] are also supported because they are subset profiles.

In the context of DASH, the following applies for text/subtitling:

All graphics type samples shall be SAP type 1. The signalling of the different text/subtitling codecs for the codecs parameters is according to W3C TTML Profile Registry [65] and is documented in Table 21.

Table 21 also provides information on ISO BMFF encapsulation.

Table 21 Subtitle MIME type and codecs parameter according to IANA and W3C registries

Codec	MIME type	Codecs Pa- rameter @codecs	ISO BMFF Encapsula- tion		
IMSC1 Timed Text [64] with- out encapsula- tion	applica- tion/ttml+xml ^(1,3)	See [65]	n/a		
IMSC1 Timed Text [64] with ISO BMFF en- capsulation	application/mp4	See [65]	ISO/IEC 14496-12 [10] ISO/IEC 14496-30 [32]		
Notes: (1) DVB DASH only supports ISO BMFF encapsulated TT, but not XML-based.					

 $\overline{28}$

 $\overline{29}$

6.4.5. Guidelines for side-loaded TTML and WebVTT files

Side-loaded TTML or WebVTT subtitles or caption files can be used by some players including dash.js. Such files can be indicated in the manifest like:

- 2 Only one file for the full period is permitted, practically limiting this use case to non-live content.
- 3 Such external files are assumed do have a timeline aligned with the Period, so that TTML time
- 4 00:00:00.000 corresponds to the start of the Period. The presentation time offset is expected to be
- 5 not presented, and if present, expected to be ignored by the DASH client.
- 6 The same applies to side-loaded WebVTT files. In that case, the @mimeType is text/vtt.
- 7 If segmented subtitles are needed, such as for live sources, ISOBMFF-packaged TTML or
- 8 WebVTT segments are expected be used to provide proper timing.

9 **6.4.6.** Annotation of Subtitles

- 10 Subtitles should be annotated properly using descriptors available in ISO/IEC 23009-1, Specifi-
- cally Role, Accessibility, Essential Property and Supplemental Property descriptors and the DASH
- 12 role scheme may be used. Guidelines for annotation are for example provided in DVB DASH,
- 13 section 7.1.2 or SCTE 214-1 [59], section 7.2.

7. Content Protection and Security

15 **7.1. Introduction**

- DASH-IF IOPs do not intend to specify a full end-to-end DRM system. However DASH-IF IOP
- provides a framework for multiple DRMs to protect DASH content by adding instructions or *Pro-*
- 18 tection System Specific, proprietary information in predetermined locations in MPDs, or DASH
- content that is encrypted with Common Encryption as defined in ISO/IEC 23001-7 [33].
- 20 The Common Encryption ('cenc') protection scheme specifies encryption parameters that can be
- applied by a scrambling system and key mapping methods using a common key identifier (KID)
- 22 to be used by different DRM systems such that the same encrypted version of a file can be com-
- bined with different DRM systems that can store proprietary information for licensing and key
- retrieval in the Protection System Specific Header Box ('pssh'), or in ContentProtection
- Descriptors in an MPD. The DRM scheme for each pssh is identified by a DRM specific Sys-
- 26 temID

32

1

- 27 The recommendations in this document reduce the encryption parameters and use of the encryption
- 28 metadata to specific use cases for VOD and live content with key rotation.
- 29 The base technologies are introduced first followed by informative chapter on standardized ele-
- 30 ments. Additional Content Protection Constraints are then listed that are specific to conformance
- 31 to DASH-264/AVC IOP.

7.2. HTTPS and DASH

- 33 The use of HTTP within DASH as a transport protocol, especially for retrieving media segments,
- 34 inherently provides many advanced features such as caching and redirection. However, when not
- encrypted, data delivered over HTTP are in the clear, and there may not be any guarantee that the
- 36 clear-text data are not being eavesdropped and tampered. If this is of concern, transport security in
- 37 HTTP-based delivery may be achieved by using HTTP over TLS (HTTPS) as specified in RFC
- 38 2818. HTTPS is a protocol for secure communication over a computer network which is widely

- used on the Internet and also increasingly used for content streaming, mainly for the following 1 2 purposes:
 - authenticating the streaming server with which a streaming client is communicating,
 - protecting the privacy of the exchanged data from eavesdropping by providing encryption of bidirectional communications between a client and a server, and
 - ensuring integrity of the exchanged data against man-in-the-middle attacks against tampering with and/or forging the contents of the communication.
- 8 Many HTTP streaming technologies (as well as many web sites) are moving to HTTPS delivery,
- 9 Youtube. such Netflix. Facebook (see for example presentations
- 10 http://dashif.org/events/event-2015-08-20/). One of the main reasons is that with Cross Origin Re-
- 11 source Sharing (CORS) (http://www.w3.org/TR/cors/). As all web browsers and services (such as
- Facebook and Google) move to HTTPS and CORS does not allow that if the origin web page is 12
- 13 HTTPS that you move to HTTP for resources delivered as links in the web page, the media also
- 14 needs to be delivered through HTTPS.

</ContentProtection>

3

4

5

6

7

37

38

39

40

41

- 15 MPEG-DASH explicitly permits the use of https as a scheme and hence, HTTP over TLS as a
- 16 transport protocol. When using HTTPS in DASH, one can for instance specify that all media seg-
- ments are delivered over HTTPS, by declaring that all the <Baseurl>'s are HTTPS based, as follow: 17

```
18
19
      <BaseURL>https://cdn1.example.com/</BaseURL>
      <BaseURL>https://cdn2.example.com/</BaseURL>
```

20 One can also use HTTPS for retrieving other types of data carried with an MPD that are HTTP-21 URL based, such as DRM licenses specified within the <ContentProtection> descriptor:

```
22
23
24
      <ContentProtection schemeIdUri="http://example.net/052011/drm">
        <drm:License>https://MoviesSP.example.com/protect?license=kljklsdfiowek</drm:License>
```

- 25 Because of the CORS recommendation of not moving from HTTPS requests to HTTP ones, whenever HTTPS is used for any portion of DASH content referenced within an MPD, it is recom-26
- 27 mended that HTTPS be used for the entirety of the DASH content referenced in the same MPD.
- 28 While using HTTPS in DASH provides good levels of trust and authenticity for data exchanged
- 29 between DASH servers and clients connected over HTTPS, it should be pointed out that HTTPS
- 30 only protects the transport link, but not the access to streaming content and the usage of streamed
- 31 content. HTTPS itself does not imply user authentication and content authorization (or access con-
- trol). This is especially the case that HTTPS provides no protection to any streamed content cached 32
- in a local buffer at a client for playback. For this reason, using HTTPS does not replace the need 33
- 34 for content protection and digital rights management of streaming content.
- 35 There are also some impacts of using HTTPS in DASH that are going to be challenges in main-
- taining DASH advantages and end-user streaming experiences: 36
 - CDN: Because of HTTPS encrypting the connection between a client and a server for each HTTPS session, it causes difficulties in caching encrypted DASH segment content on CDNs to reuse it for other sessions and other clients.
 - Network: As use of HTTPS establishes a secure tunnel between a client and a server, it is impossible for underlying networks (or any entities on the data delivery path between the

- client and server) to manage and optimize encrypted data traffics over the networks, especially when the networks are mobile, based on inspecting and analyzing content of the traffics.
 - Efficiency: Using HTTPS introduces "double encryption" when streaming content is already encrypted, for instance, using a content protection or DRM system. While delivering encrypted content over HTTPS may not increase content security, it does add extra encryption overhead and therefore latency in streaming encrypted content.

7.3. Base Technologies Summary

- 9 The normative standard that defines common encryption in combination with ISO BMFF is ISO/IEC 23001-7 [33]. It includes:
 - Common ENCryption (CENC) of NAL structure video and other media data with AES-128 CTR mode
 - Support for decryption of a single Representation by multiple DRM systems
 - Key rotation (changing media keys over time)
 - XML syntax for expressing a default KID attribute and pssh element in MPDs

The main DRM components are:

- 1. The **ContentProtection** descriptors in the MPD (see [5] 5.3.7.2-Table 9, 5.8.5.2 and [5] 5.8.4.1) that contains the URI for signaling of the use of Common Encryption or the specific DRM being used.
- 2. 'tenc' parameters that specify encryption parameters and default_KID (see [33] 8.2). The 'tenc' information is in the Initialization Segment. Any KIDs in Movie Fragment sample group description boxes override the 'tenc' parameter of the default_KID, as well as the 'not encrypted' parameter. Keys referenced by KID in sample group descriptions must be available when samples are available for decryption, and may be stored in a protection system specific header box ('pssh') in each movie fragment box ('moof'). The default KID information may also appear in the MPD (see [33] 11).
- 3. 'senc' parameters that may store initialization vectors and subsample encryption ranges. The 'senc' box is stored in each track fragment box ('traf') of an encrypted track (see [33] 7.1), and the stored parameters accessed using the sample auxiliary information offset box ('saio') and the sample auxiliary information size box ('saiz') (see [4] 8.7.8 and 8.7.9).
- 4. 'pssh' license acquisition data or keys for each DRM in a format that is "Protection System Specific". 'pssh' refers to the Protection System Specific Header box described in [33], 8.1.2. 'pssh' boxes may be stored in Initialization or Media Segments (see [31] 8.1 and 8.2). It may also be present in a cenc:pssh element in the MPD (see [5] 5.8.4.1, [33] 11.2.1). cenc:pssh information in the MPD allows faster parsing, earlier access, identification of duplicate license requests, and addition of DRMs without content modification. 'pssh' boxes in Initialization Segments are not recommended because they trigger a license request each time an Initialization Segment is processed in a Web browser for each Representation and bitrate switch.

Note: The duplication of the pssh information in the Initialization Segment may cause difficulties in playback with HTML5 - EME based players. I.e. content will fail unless players build complex DRM specific license handling.

- 5. Key rotation is mainly used to allow changes in entitlement for continuous live content. It is used as defined in [33] with the following requirements:
 - Sample To Group Box ('sbgp') and Sample Group Description Box ('sgpd') of type 'seig' are used to indicate the KID applied to each sample, and changes to KIDs over time (i.e. "key rotation"). (see [4] 8.9.4) KIDs referenced by sample groups must have the keys corresponding to those KIDs available when the samples in a Segment are available for decryption. Keys referenced by sample groups in a Segment may be stored in that Segment in Protection System Specific Header Boxes ('pssh') stored in the Movie Fragment Box ('moof'). A version 1 box may be used to list the KID values stored to enable removal of duplicate boxes if a file is defragmented.
 - Keys stored in Media Segment 'pssh' boxes must be stored in the same DRM format for all users so that the same Media Segments can be shared by all users. User-specific information must be delivered "out of band", as in a "root" license associated with the default KID, which can be individualized for each DRM client, and control access to the shared 'pssh' information stored in Media Segments, e.g. by encrypting the keys stored in Segment 'pssh' boxes with a "root key" provided by the user-specific DRM root license. Common Encryption specifies 'pssh' to enable key storage in movie fragments/Segments; but it does not preclude other methods of key delivery that satisfy KID indexing and availability requirements.
 - For details see Section 7.5.

ISO BMFF Support for Common Encryption and DRM 7.4.

7.4.1. 27 **Box Hierarchy**

- 28 The ISO Media Format carries content protection information in different locations. Their hierar-29 chy is explained in the informational chapter below, followed by a reference on where these ele-
- 30 ments are standardized.

1 2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10 11

12

13

14

15

16 17

18 19

20

21

22 23

24

25

26

31

32 The following shows the box hierarchy and composition for relevant boxes, when using common 33 encryption:

34	•	moov/pssh (zero o	or one per system ID)
35	•	<pre>moov/trak/mdia/minf/stbl/stsd/sinf/schm</pre>		(one, if encrypted)
36	•	<pre>moov/trak/mdia/minf/stbl/stsd/sinf/schi/t</pre>	tenc	(one, if encrypted)
37	•	moof/traf/saiz		(one, if encrypted)
38	•	moof/traf/saio		(one, if encrypted)
39	•	moof/traf/senc		(one, if encrypted)

40 for key rotation

Graphical overviews of above structure for VOD content and live content are shown in Figure 17 and Figure 18 respectively.

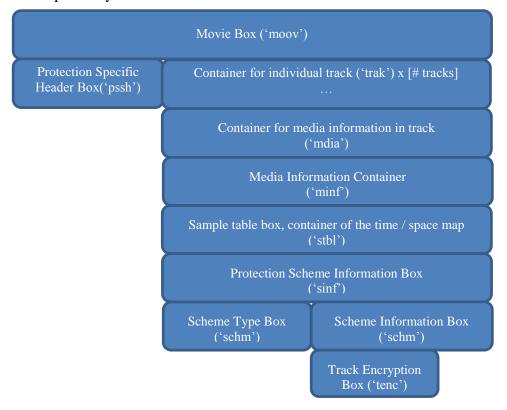


Figure 17: Visualization of box structure for single key content

6 7

8

9

10

Movie Fragment ('moof') Protection Specific Track Fragment ('traf') Header Box ('pssh') Sample Aux Sample Aux Sample Sample Sample En-Info Sizes Info Offset Group Box Group Desc cryption Box ('saiz') Box ('saio') ('sbgp') Box ('sgpd') Box ('senc')

Figure 18: Visualization of box structure with key rotation

7.4.2. ISO BMFF Structure Overview

Table 22 provides pointers to relevant information in the specifications to understand the standard DRM components and if the main description is located in the ISO base media file format ([10]),

or the Common Encryption specification ([33]).

Table 22 Boxes relevant for DRM systems

Box	Full Name / Usage	Reference
moof	movie fragment header One 'moof' box for each fragment, i.e. Media Segment/Subsegment.	[10] 8.32 + [5]
moov	movie header, container for metadata One 'moov' box per file.	[10] 8.1
pssh	Protection System Specific Header Box Contains DRM specific data. pssh box version 1 (specified in Common Encryption 2 nd edition) contains a list of KIDs to allow removing duplicate 'pssh' boxes when defragmenting a file by comparing their KIDs	[33] 8.1.1
saio	Sample Auxiliary Information Offsets Box Contains the offset to the IVs & subsample encryption byte ranges.	[10] 8.7.9
saiz	Sample Auxiliary Information Sizes Box Contains the size of the IVs & subsample encryption byte ranges.	[10] 8.7.8
senc	Sample Encryption Box Contains Initialization Vectors; and subsample ranges for a Media Segment	[33] 7.1
schi	Scheme Information Box Container boxes used by that protection scheme type.	[10] 8.12.6 + [33] 4
schm	Scheme Type Box Contains the encryption scheme, identified by a 4 character code, e.g. 'cenc'	[10], 8.12.5 + [33] 4
seig	Cenc Sample Encryption Information Video Group Entry A sample description containing KIDs describing sample groups in this segment, for key rotation.	[33] 6
sbgp	Sample to Group Box lists a group of samples	[10] +[33] 5
sgpd	Sample Group Description Box Describes properties of a sample group	[10] 8.9.3 + [33] 5
sinf	Protection Scheme Information Box Signals that the stream is encrypted	[10] 8.12.1 + [33] 4
stsd	Sample description table (codec type, initialization parameters, stream layout, etc.)	[10] 8.16
tenc	Track Encryption Box Contains default encryption parameters for the entire track, e.g. default_KID	[33] 8.2.1

1 2

3 4 5

7.5. Periodic Re-Authorization

2 7.5.1. Introduction

- 3 This section explains different options and tradeoffs to enable change in keys (aka key rotation),
- 4 considering different use cases, application scenarios, content encoding variants and signaling re-
- 5 quirements.

1

13 14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21 22

23

24

25

26

27

28

6 7.5.2. Use Cases and Requirements

- 7 The main use case in this context is to enable service changes at program boundaries, not to in-
- 8 crease security of CENC by preventing e.g. key factoring or key redistribution. In order to clarify
- 9 this application, the term *periodic re-authorization* is used instead of the term *key rotation*.
- 10 In addition, this is one of the ways to implement counting of active streams as they are periodically
- 11 requesting keys from a license server.
- 12 The following use cases and requirements have been considered:
 - Ability to force a client device to re-authorize to verify that it is still authorized for content consumption.
 - Support for distribution models such as: Live content, PVR, PPV, VOD, SVOD, live to VOD, network DVR. This includes where live content is converted into another consumption license for e.g. catch up TV.
 - Uninterrupted playback when keys are rotated.
 - Preventing of client storm: Requests from client should be distributed where possible to prevent spiking loads at isolated times.
 - Quick recovery: If the server or many client devices fail, the service should be able to resume quickly.
 - o Player visibility into the key rotation signal
 - Regional blackout: Device location may be taken into account to enable de-activation of content in a geographical area.
 - Hybrid broadcast/unicast networks in which receivers operating in broadcast-only mode at least some of the time, i.e. unable to always download licenses on-demand through unicast.
 - No required changes to the standard process and validity of MPDs.

29 **7.5.3. Implementation Options**

- 30 **7.5.3.1.** General
- 31 This section describes approaches for *periodic re-authorization*; recommended because they best
- 32 cover the use cases and allow interoperable implementation. Other approaches are possible and
- may be considered by individual implementers.
- One of those is explicit signaling using e.g. esmq messages, using a custom key rotation signal to
- 35 indicate future KIDs.

To prevent the initial client storm to retrieve the first keys, before they are rotated, the initial pssh parameters SHOULD be included in the MPD as described in 7.4.1.

3

8

9

10

11

12

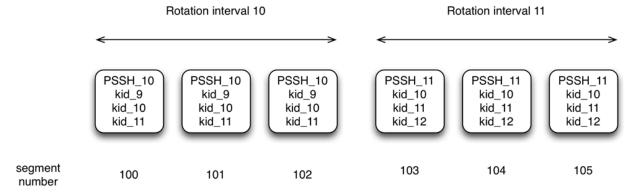
7.5.3.2. Period Boundaries

- One possibility is to use a DASH Period as minimum key duration interval and existing MPD level signaling for KID.
- 7 This is a simple implementation and a possible alternative but has limitations in the flexibility:
 - The signal does not allow for early warning and time to switch the encryption keys and context.
 - The logic of the periods is decided by content creation not DRM. Boundaries may not be suited and period may be longer than desired key interval

7.5.3.3. Future Keys in pssh

- 13 This approach considers the protection system to be responsible to manage notification and key
- retrieval that prevents a client storm. The pssh information is used for signaling in a *content pro-*
- 15 tected system proprietary form. No additional signaling mechanism is created and the DRM is
- 16 managing key rotation by providing extra information in the Protection System Specific Header
- Box ('pssh') (see [5]). To prevent a client storm on key change boundaries the following imple-
- 18 mentation options can be considered. They are listed for informational purpose and do not affect
- 19 the guidelines on content formatting.
- 20 Current and future keys or access information and validity times are provided in a proprietary
- format in the pssh (see example in figure below). The client can chose a random time to use the
- 22 access information to request licenses so that requests are distributed over time.

23



24 25

Figure 19: PSSH with version numbers and KIDs.

26 **7.5.3.4. Key Hierarchy**

- 27 This approach also makes the protection system responsible to manage the key update and limits
- 28 head end communication by using different types of licenses that established a hierarchy as fol-
- 29 lows:
- 30 Entitlement Management License (EML) A license a broadcaster can issue once to enforce some
- 31 scope of content, such as a channel or library of shows (existing and future). It is cryptographically

- 1 bound to one DRM domain associated with one user ID and, and enables access to ECLs and media
- 2 keys associated with each show it authorizes.
- 3 Entitlement Control License (ECL) – A license that contains a media key and can only be accessed
- by provisioned devices that have been authorized by installing the associated EML. ECLs may be 4
- 5 delivered with the media in a broadcast distribution.
- 6 Changing media keys and ECLs per asset, forces re-authorization of each show by the DRM sys-
- 7 tem that must extract the media key.

7.6. MPD support for Encryption and DRM Signaling 8

7.6.1. 9 Introduction

- 10 The MPD contains signaling of the content encryption and key management methods used to
- help the receiving client determine if it can possibly play back the content. The MPD elements to 11
- be used are the ContentProtection Descriptor elements. At least one ContentProtec-12
- tion Descriptor element SHALL be present in each AdaptationSet element describing en-13
- 14 crypted content.

7.6.2. 15 **Use of the Content Protection Descriptor**

7.6.2.1. 16 ContentProtection Descriptor for mp4protection Scheme

- 17 A ContentProtection descriptor with the @schemeIdUri value equals
- 18 "urn:mpeq:dash:mp4protection:2011" signals that content is encrypted with the
- 19 scheme indicated in the @value attribute. The file structure of content protection schemes is
- 20 specified in [10], 5.8.5.2, and the @value = 'cenc' for the Common Encryption scheme, as
- 21 specified in [33]. Although the ContentProtection Descriptor for UUID Scheme described
- 22 below is usually used for license acquisition, the ContentProtection Descriptor with
- 23 @schemeIdUri="urn:mpeq:dash:mp4protection:2011" and with @cenc:de-
- 24 fault KID may be sufficient to acquire a license or identify a previously acquired license that
- 25 can be used to decrypt the Adaptation Set. It may also be sufficient to identify encrypted content
- 26 in the MPD when combined with license acquisition information stored in 'pssh' boxes in Initialization Segments. 27

31

32

- 28 A ContentProtection Descriptor for the mp4 Protection Scheme is used to identify the de-
- fault KID, as specified by the 'tenc' box, using the @cenc:default KID attribute defined in 29
- [33], section 11.1. The value of the attribute is the KID expressed in UUID string notation. 30

<ContentProtection schemeIdUri="urn:mpeg:dash:mp4protection:2011"</pre> value="cenc" cenc:default KID="34e5db32-8625-47cd-ba06-68fca0655a72"/>

33 When the default KID is present on each Adaptation Set, it allows a player to determine if a

- 34 new license needs to be acquired for each Adaptation Set by comparing their default KIDs
- 35 with each other, and with the default KIDs of stored licenses. A player can simply compare
- 36 these KID strings and determine what unique licenses are necessary without interpreting license
- information specific to each DRM system. 37

7.6.2.2. **ContentProtection Descriptor for UUID Scheme**

- 2 A UUID ContentProtection descriptor in the MPD may indicate the availability of a par-
- ticular DRM scheme for license acquisition. An example is provided below: 3

4

1

```
<ContentProtection
 value="DRMNAME version"/>
```

5 The schemeIdUri uses a UUID URN with the UUID string equal to the registered SystemID for a 6 particular DRM system. A list of known DRM SystemIDs can be found in the DASH identifier 7

repository available here: http://www.dashif.org/identifiers/protection.

8 9

26

30

31

32

33 34

35

36

- This is specified in [10], 5.8.5.2 and is referred to as "ContentProtection Descriptor for
- UUID Scheme" in the following. 10

11 7.6.2.3. Protection System Specific Header Box cenc:pssh element in MPD

- 12 A 'pssh' box is defined by each DRM system for use with their registered SystemID, and the
- 13 same box can be stored in the MPD within a ContentProtection Descriptor for UUID
- scheme using an extension element in the "cenc:" namespace. Examples are provided in [9] and 14
- 15 in [33] sec. 11.2.
- 16 Carrying cenc:default KID attribute and a cenc:pssh element in the MPD is useful to
- allow key identification, license evaluation, and license retrieval before live availability of initial-17
- 18 ization segments. This allows clients to spread license requests and avoid simultaneous requests
- from all viewers at the instant that an Initialization Segments containing license acquisition infor-19
- 20 mation in 'pssh' becomes available. With cenc: default KID indicated in the mp4protection
- 21 ContentProtection Descriptor on each Adaptation Set, clients can determine if that key and
- this presentation is not available to the viewer (e.g. without purchase or subscription), if the key is 22 23 already downloaded, or which licenses the client SHOULD download before the @availabil-
- 24 ityStartTime of the presentation based on the default KID of each AdaptationSet
- 25 element selected.

7.7. Additional Content Protection Constraints

- The following describes additional constraints for presentations to be conformant with DASH-27
- 28 264/AVC, for both MPD and ISO Media files.

29 7.7.1. **ISO BMFF Content Protection Constraints**

- There SHALL be identical values of default KID in the Track Encryption Box ('tenc') of all Representation referenced by one Adaptation Set. Different Adaptation Sets may have equal or different values of default KID.
- 'pssh' boxes SHOULD NOT be present in Initialization Segments, and cenc:pssh elements in ContentProtection Descriptors used instead. If 'pssh' boxes are present in Initialization Segments, each Initialization Segment within one Adaptation Set SHALL contain an equivalent pssh box for each SystemID, i.e. license acquisition from any

Representation is sufficient to allow switching between Representations within the Adaptation Set without acquiring a new license.

Note: 'pssh' boxes in Initialization Segments may result in playback failure during

browser playback when a license request is initiated each time an Initialization Segment is processed, such as the start of each protected Representation, each track selection, and each bitrate switch. This content requires DASH players that can parse the 'pssh' box contents to determine the duplicate license requests and block them.

A cenc:pssh element is parsed once per Adaptation Set by a player's MPD parser, and duplicate requests are identified by duplicate cenc:default_KID values. In this case, only the DASH player initiates license requests, and may do so per Period, if cenc:default KID is a new value.

7.7.2. MPD Content Protections Constraints

- For an encrypted Adaptation Set, **ContentProtection** Descriptors SHALL always be present in the **AdaptationSet** element, and apply to all contained Representations.
- A ContentProtection Descriptor for the mp4 Protection Scheme with the @schemeIdUri value of "urn:mpeg:dash:mp4protection:2011" and @value='cenc' SHALL be present in the AdaptationSet element if the contained Representations are encrypted.

Note that this allows clients to recognize the Adaptation Set is encrypted with common encryption scheme without the need to understand any system specific UUID descriptors. The ContentProtection Descriptor for the mp4protection scheme SHOULD contain the optional attribute @cenc:default_KID. The 'tenc' box that specifies the encoded track encryption parameters SHALL be considered the source of truth for the default key ID value since it contains the default_KID field, and is present in the movie box, as specified in [33], section 8.2.1. The MPD cenc:default_KID attribute SHALL match the 'tenc' default KID.

Note that this allows clients to identify the default KID from the MPD using a standard location and format, and makes it accessible to general purpose clients that don't understand the system specific information formats of all DRM schemes that might be signaled.

• The cenc:pssh element SHOULD be present in the **ContentProtection** Descriptor for each UUID Scheme. The base64 encoded contents of the element SHALL be equivalent to a 'pssh' box including its header. The information in the 'pssh' box SHOULD be sufficient to allow for license acquisition.

Note: A player such as DASH.js hosted by a browser may pass the contents of this element through the Encrypted Media Extension (EME) API to the DRM system Content Decryption Module (CDM) with a SystemID equal to the Descriptor's UUID. This allows clients to acquire a license using only information in the MPD, prior to downloading Segments. Below is an example of the recommended format for a hypothetical acme DRM service:

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13 14

15

16 17

18 19

20

21

22

23

24

25

2627

28

29

30

31 32

33

34

35

36

• The @value attribute of the **ContentProtection** Descriptor for UUID Scheme SHOULD contain the DRM system and version in a human readable form.

7.7.3. Other Content Protections Constraints

In the case where the 'pssh' box element is present in the MPD and in the Initialization Segment, the 'pssh' box element in the MPD SHALL take precedence, because the parameters in the MPD will be processed first, are easier to update, and can be assumed to be up to date at the time the MPD is fetched.

Recommended scheduling of License and key delivery:

- Request licenses on initial processing of an MPD if **ContentProtection** Descriptors or Initialization Segments are available with license acquisition information. This is intended to avoid a large number of synchronized license requests at **MPD**@availabil-ityStartTime.
- Prefetch licenses for a new Period in advance of its presentation time to allow license download and processing time, and prevent interruption of continuous decryption and playback. Advanced requests will also help prevent a large number of synchronized license requests during a live presentation at **Period**@start time.

7.7.4. Additional Constraints for Periodic Re-Authorization

- Key rotation should not occur within individual segments, as their duration is typically short enough to enable the intended use cases.
- Each Movie Fragment SHOULD contain one 'pssh' in each 'moof' box per SystemID that contains sufficient information for the DRM system with matching SystemID to obtain protected keys for this movie fragment, when combined with:
 - o Information from 'pssh' in 'moov' or cenc:pssh in MPD.
 - o KID associated with each sample from 'seig' sample group description box.
 - o Sample to group boxes that list all the samples that use a particular KID.
- The KID should be observable by the player by reading the clear key_ids in PSSH definition v1. Clear Key licenses SHALL NOT be used to manage a key and KID that is also used by a DRM system. The use of an unprotected DRM key risks the security of DRM systems using that key, and violates the terms of use of most DRM systems.
- If the key is does not need to be retrieved, a pssh update may not result in a license request.
- If key_id cannot be observed, the player may perform binary comparison of pssh segments to understand updates.

7.7.5. Encryption of Different Representations

- Representations contained in one Adaptation Set SHALL be protected by the same license for each
- 38 protection system ("DRM"), and SHALL have the same value of 'default_KID' in their
- 39 'tenc' boxes in their Initialization Segments. This is to enable seamless switching within Adap-
- 40 tation Sets, which is generally not possible if a new DRM license needs to be authorized, client
- bound, generated, downloaded, and processed for each new Representation.

- 1 In the case of key rotation, if root licenses are used, the same requirement applies to the root li-
- 2 censes (one license per Adaptation Set for each DRM), and also means all Representations SHALL
- 3 have the same value of 'default KID' in their 'tenc' boxes in their Initialization Segments.
- 4 The use of root and leaf licenses is optional and DRM specific, but leaf licenses are typically
- 5 delivered in band to allow real time license acquisition, and do not require repeating client authen-
- 6 tication, authorization, and rebuilding the security context with each key change in order to enable
- 7 continuous playback without interruption cause be key acquisition or license processing.
- 8 In cases where SD and HD and UHD Representations are contained in one presentation, different
- 9 license rights may be required for each quality level and may be sold separately. If different li-
- 10 censes are required for different quality levels, then it is necessary to create separate Adaptation
- 11 Sets for each quality level, each with a different license and value of 'default KID'.
- 12 Representations that are equivalent resolution and bitrate but encrypted with different keys may
- be included in different Adaptation Sets. Seamless switching between UHD, HD and SD Repre-
- sentations is difficult because these quality levels typically use different decryption licenses and
- 15 keys, use different DRM output rules (prohibit analog interfaces, require resolution down-scaling,
- require HDCP encryption on output, etc.), and use different decoding parameters for e.g. subsam-
- pling, codec, profile, bit depth, aspect ratios and color spaces.
- 18 If any Representation is encrypted in an Adaptation Set, then all must be encrypted using the same
- 19 default KID in the Track Encryption Box ('tenc') to avoid realtime changes to the DRM
- 20 licenses and security context. KID values may change over time ("key rotation") as specified in
- 21 Common Encryption and a particular DRM system.
- 22 For all Representations within an Adaptation Set with @bitstreamSwitching="false" (de-
- fault), the following parameters shall apply.
- 'tenc' default KID shall be equal for all Representations

25 **7.7.6.** Encryption of Multiple Periods

- 26 Periods SHALL only change default KID and corresponding license at the start of a new Pe-
- 27 riod corresponding to a different file. A different file is indicated by a different default_KID
- signaled in the 'tenc' box in the Initialization Segment.
- A file associated with a single license may be continued over multiple Periods by being referenced
- 30 by multiple Representations over multiple Periods (for instance, a program interspersed with ad
- 31 Periods). A client can recognize the same cenc:default KID value and avoid having to
- download the same license again; but the DRM system may require a complete erase and rebuild
- of the security context, including all key material, samples in process, etc., between Periods with
- 34 different licenses or no license (between protected and clear Periods).

35 7.7.7. DRM System Identification

- 36 The DRM system is signaled in the MPD and 'pssh' boxes with a SystemID. A list of known
- 37 DRMs can be found in the DASH identifier repository available here:
- 38 http://www.dashif.org/identifiers/protection.

7.7.8. Protection of Media Presentations that Include SD, HD and UHD Adaptation Sets

- 41 Per DASH IF interop points, Representations with separate keys, licenses, and license policy are
- 42 contained in different Adaptation Sets.

- 1 Adaptive bitrate switching can function automatically within an Adaptation Set without changing
- 2 keys, licenses, robustness and output rules, etc.
- 3 A player may download licenses for multiple Adaptation Sets in a Group, and seamlessly switch
- 4 between them if it is able. Seamless switching between Adaptation Sets is allowed, but not re-
- 5 quired. DASH may need to signal which Adaptation Sets are intended for seamless switching, i.e.
- 6 have identical source content, same picture aspect ratio, same exact rescaled pixel registration,
- 7 same sample description (e.g. 'avc3'), same initialization behavior (@bitstreamSwitch-
- 8 ing = true/false), same Timescale and @timescale, and are mutually time-aligned.
- 9 The DASH-IF interop points are intended to make bitrate switching within an Adaptation Set sim-
- ple and automatic, whether Representations are encrypted or not. Placement of Representations
- in different Adaptation Sets informs players that those Representations need to be initialized with
- different parameters, such as a different key and license. The full initialization process is repeated
- per Period. Adaptation Sets with @bitstreamSwitching = "true" only need to be initial-
- ized once per Period. Adaptation Sets with @bitstreamSwitching = "false" need to be
- partially re-initialized on each Representation switch (to change the SPS parameter sets referenced
- from NALs to those stored in in the containing track's 'avcC'), but most initialized parameters
- such as timescale, codec Profile/Level, display buffer size, colorspace, etc.; and licenses and the
- 18 DRM system ... do not need to be changed.
- 19 Fetching and resetting keys and licenses during adaptive switching requires processing Initializa-
- 20 tion Segments with different 'tenc' default_KID and possibly 'pssh' boxes. That may not be
- seamless, especially in browser playback where the decoders are only aware of player switching
- when an Initialization Segment flows through the MSE buffer and a needKey() event is raised
- via EME.
- Note that switching between Adaptation Sets with different Media Profiles could be restricted by
- key and license policy, e.g. the user only purchased SD rights, the player only has analog output
- and HD content requires a protected digital output, UHD content requires hardware protected
- 27 DRM, etc.
- 28 Implementations that seamlessly switch between Representations with different keys and policies
- 29 generally require a standardized presentation ID or content ID system that associates multiple keys
- and licenses to that ID and presentation, then downloads only the keys/licenses authorized for that
- 31 user and device (e.g. SD or HD+SD). The player must then install those licenses and use player
- 32 logic to select only Representations in an Adaptation Set for which a license is installed and output
- controls, display configuration, etc. allow playback (e.g. only Representations keyed for an in-
- stalled SD license). Players and license servers without this pre-configuration protocol and adap-
- 35 tive switching logic will encounter key/license requests in the process of adaptive switching, and
- may find output blocked by different license policies, user rights, etc.

7.8. Workflow Overview

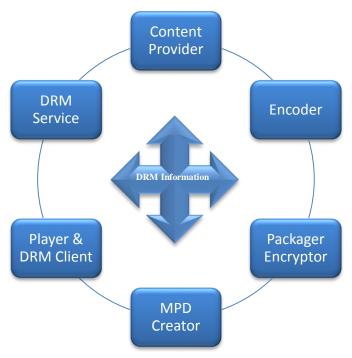


Figure 20 Logical Roles that Exchange DRM Information and Media

4 Figure 20 shows logical entities that may send or receive DRM information such as media keys, 5 asset identifiers, licenses, and license acquisition information. A physical entity may combine 6 multiple logical roles, and the point of origin for information, such as media keys and asset iden-7 tifiers, can differ; so various information flows are possible. This is an informative example of 8

how the roles are distributed to facilitate the description of workflow and use cases. Alternative

9 roles and functions can be applied to create conformant content.

10 **Description of Logical Roles:**

- 11 **Content Provider** – A publisher who provides the rights and rules for delivering protected media, 12 also possibly source media (mezzanine format, for transcoding), asset identifiers, key identifiers
- (KID), key values, encoding instructions, and content description metadata. 13
- 14 Encoder – A service provider who encodes Adaptation Sets in a specified media format, number
- 15 of streams, range of bitrates and resolutions, seamless switching constraints, etc., possibly deter-
- 16 mined by the publisher. An asset identifier needs to be assigned to each encoded track in order to
- 17 associate a key identifier, a Representation element in an MPD, a possible 'pssh' box in the file
- 18 header, and a DRM license separately downloaded.
- 19 Packager / Encryptor - A service provider who encrypts and packages media files, inserting
- 20 default KID in the file header 'tenc' box, initialization vectors and subsample byte ranges
- 21 in track fragments indexed by 'saio' and 'saiz' boxes, and possibly packages 'pssh' boxes
- 22 containing license acquisition information (from the DRM Provider) in the file header. Tracks that
- 23 are partially encrypted or encrypted with multiple keys require sample to group boxes and sample
- 24 group description boxes in each track fragment to associate different KIDs to groups of samples.
 - The Packager could originate values for KIDs, media keys, encryption layout, etc., then send that

25

1

- 1 information to other entities that need it, including the DRM Provider and Streamer, and probably
- 2 the Content Provider. However, the Packager could receive that information from a different point
- 3 of origin, such as the Content Provider or DRM Provider.
- 4 MPD Creator The MPD Creator is assumed to create one or more types of DASH MPD, and
- 5 provide indexing of Segments and/or 'sidx' indexes for download so that players can byte range
- 6 index Subsegments. The MPD must include descriptors for Common Encryption and DRM key
- 7 management systems, and SHOULD include identification of the default KID for each Ad-
- 8 aptationSet element, and sufficient information in UUID ContentProtection De-
- 9 scriptor elements to acquire a DRM license. The default KID is available from the Packager
- and any other role that created it, and the DRM specific information is available from the DRM
- 11 Provider.
- 12 Player / DRM Client Gets information from different sources: MPD, Media files and DRM
- 13 License.
- 14 **DRM Service** The DRM Provider creates licenses containing a protected media key that can
- only be decrypted by a trusted client.
- 16 The DRM Provider needs to know the default KID and DRM SystemID and possibly other
- information like asset ID and player domain ID in order to create and download one or more li-
- censes required for a Presentation on a particular device. Each DRM system has different license
- acquisition information, a slightly different license acquisition protocol, and a different license
- 20 format with different playback rules, output rules, revocation and renewal system, etc. The DRM
- 21 Provider typically must supply the Streamer and the Packager license acquisition information for
- 22 each UUID ContentProtection Descriptor element or 'pssh' box, respectively.
- 23 The DRM Service may also provide logic to manage key rotation, DRM domain management,
- revocation and renewal and other content protection related features.
- 25
- 26 Figure 21 shows a simple workflow with pssh information in the Initialization Segment for in-
- 27 formational purpose.

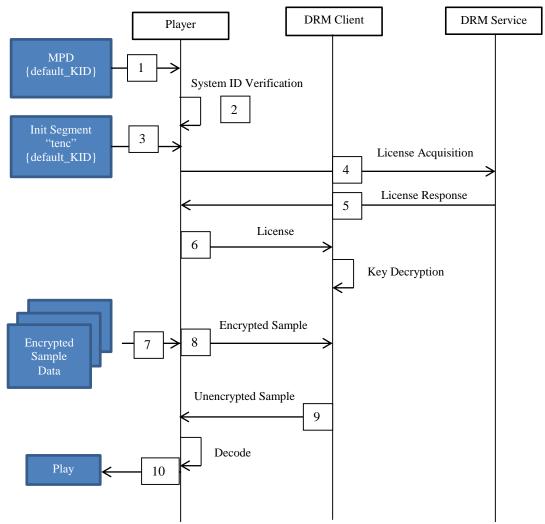


Figure 21 Example of Information flow for DRM license retrieval

5

6

7

- [1] A MPD may include **ContentProtection** Descriptors to indicate that the 'cenc' scheme is used to encrypt the referenced media, and to provide license acquisition information for one (or more) DRM system(s) with the indicated SystemID.
- [2] The Player verifies if a specified DRM is supported using System ID value(s) from the MPD.
- With unique KIDs, a license request using the cenc: default_KID attribute value is sufficient to identify a DRM license containing that key that will enable playback of the Components, Representations, Adaptation Sets, or Periods that the ContentProtection Descriptor element and
- 11 default_KID describe.
- 12 [3] The TrackEncryptionBox ('tenc') contains default values for the IsEncrypted,
- 13 IV_size, and KID for the entire track These values are used as the encryption parameters for the
- samples in this track unless over-ridden by the sample group description associated with a group
- of samples. The license acquisition information could be also present in 'pssh' boxes in the ini-
- 16 tialization segment.

- 1 [4] Decryption Key acquisition can be performed either by the Player or the DRM Client.
- 2 [5] DRM License / Decryption Key response includes the required material for enabling access.
- 3 [6] DRM licenses/rights need not be stored in order to look up a key using KID values stored in
- 4 the file and decrypt media samples using the encryption parameters stored in each track.
- 5 [7] The Player requesting encrypted sample data.
- 6 [8] The Player provides encrypted sample data to the DRM Client for decryption using the decryp-
- 7 tion key. How the DRM system locates the identified decryption key is left to the DRM.
- 8 [9] The Player received unencrypted sample data from the DRM Client.

9 **8. DASH-IF Interoperability Points**

10 **8.1. Introduction**

- 11 This version of the document defines Interoperability Points in this section. Earlier versions of this
- document, especially version 2 [2] defines legacy IOPs.

13 **8.2. DASH-AVC/264 main**

14 8.2.1. Introduction

- 15 The scope of the DASH-AVC/264 main interoperability point is basic support of high-quality
- video distribution over the top based on H.264/AVC up to 1080p. Both, live and on-demand ser-
- vices are supported.

2223

24

2526

27

28 29

30 31

32

33

3435

36 37

- 18 The compliance to DASH-AVC/264 main may be signaled by a @profiles attribute with the
- value "http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264main"

20 **8.2.2. Definition**

- 21 A DASH client conforms to the IOP by supporting at least the following features:
 - All DASH-related features as defined in section 3 of this document.
 - The requirements and guidelines in section 4.9.2 for simple live operation.
 - The requirements and guidelines in section 5.6.1 for server-based ad insertion.
 - H.264/MPEG AVC Progressive High Profile at level 4.0 as defined in section 6.2 together with all AVC-related requirements and recommendation in section 6.2.
 - MPEG-4 HE-AAC v2 level 2 profile audio codec as defined in section 6.3. Dynamic Range Control is not expected to be supported.
 - subtitle and closed captioning support
 - o using SMPTE-TT as defined in section 6.4.2
 - For On-Demand single file download is sufficient.
 - For live services and/or if key rotation is to be supported, the encapsulation into ISO BMFF is necessary.
 - o Using CEA-608/708 as defined in section 6.4.3.
 - content protection based on common encryption and key rotation as defined in section 7. And specifically, the client supports MPD-based parsing and movie box based parsing of DRM related parameters for common encryption.

- 1 Content shall only be authored claiming conformance to this IOP if such a client can properly play
- 2 the content. In addition, the content shall follow the mandatory aspects and should take into ac-
- 3 count the recommendations and guidelines for content authoring documented in section 3 (DASH
- 4 features), section 4.9.2 (simple live operation), section 5.6.1 (server-based ad insertion), AVC-
- 5 related issues in section 6.2, section 6.3 (audio), section 6.4.2 (SMPTE-TT), section 6.4.3 (CEA-
- 6 608/708), and section 7 (Content Protection).
- 7 If content is offered claiming conformance to this IOP, the content author is encouraged to use the
- 8 HTTP-URL construction as defined in [9], section 5.1.4.

9 **8.3. DASH-AVC/264 high**

10 8.3.1. Introduction

- 11 The scope of the DASH-AVC/264 interoperability point is support of high-quality video distribu-
- tion over the top based on H.264/AVC up to 1080p. Both, live and on-demand services are sup-
- ported as well as features for main live and advanced ad insertion.
- 14 The compliance to DASH-AVC/264 may be signaled by a @profiles attribute with the value
- 15 "http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264high"

16 **8.3.2. Definition**

- A client that attempts to consume content generated conforming to this IOP shall support the following features:
 - All features required for DASH-264/AVC main as defined in section 8.2.
- The client requirements and recommendations for the main live operation as defined in section 4.9.3.
- 22 Content shall only be authored claiming conformance to this IOP if such a client can properly play
- 23 the content. In addition, the content shall follow the mandatory aspects and should take into ac-
- 24 count the recommendations and guidelines for content authoring documented in section 8.2
- 25 (DASH-264/AVC main), section 4.9.3 (main live operation), and section 5.6.2 (app-based ad in-
- 26 sertion).

19

- 27 If content is offered claiming conformance to this IOP, the content author is encouraged to use the
- 28 HTTP-URL construction as defined in [9], section 5.1.4.

29 **8.4. DASH-IF IOP simple**

8.4.1. Introduction

- 31 The scope of the DASH-IF IOP simple interoperability point is the basic support of efficient high-
- 32 quality video distribution over the top with HD video up to 1080p including support for HEVC 8
- 33 bit.

38 39

- 34 The compliance to DASH-IF IOP simple may be signaled by a @profiles attribute with the
- 35 value "http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash-if-simple"

8.4.2. Definition

- A DASH client conforms to the IOP by supporting at least the following features:
 - All DASH-related features as defined in section 3 of this document.
 - The requirements and guidelines in section 4.9.2 for simple live operation.
- The requirements and guidelines in section 5.6.1 for server-based ad insertion.

- H.264/MPEG AVC Progressive High Profile at level 4.0 as defined in section 6.2 together with all AVC-related requirements and recommendation in section 6.2.
- H.265/MPEG-H HEVC Main Profile Main Tier at level 4.1 as defined in section 6.2 together with all HEVC-related requirements and recommendation in section 6.2.
- MPEG-4 HE-AAC v2 level 2 profile audio codec as defined in section 6.3. Dynamic Range Control is not expected to be supported.
- subtitle and closed captioning support
 - o using SMPTE-TT as defined in section 6.4.2
 - For On-Demand single file download is sufficient.
 - For live services and/or if key rotation is to be supported, the encapsulation into ISO BMFF is necessary.
 - O Using CEA-608/708 as defined in section 6.4.3.
- content protection based on common encryption and key rotation as defined in section 7. And specifically, the client supports MPD-based parsing and movie box based parsing of DRM related parameters for common encryption.

Content shall only be authored claiming conformance to this IOP if such a client can properly play the content. In addition, the content shall follow the mandatory aspects and should take into ac-

- the content. In addition, the content shall follow the mandatory aspects and should take into account the recommendations and guidelines for content authoring documented in section 3 (DASH
- 19 features), section 4.9.2 (simple live operation), section 5.6.1 (server-based ad insertion), section
- 20 6.2 (video) section 6.2 (surfice rection 6.4.2 (SMDTE TT) section 6.4.2 (CEA 609/709) and
- 20 6.2 (video), section 6.3 (audio), section 6.4.2 (SMPTE-TT), section 6.4.3 (CEA-608/708), and
- 21 section 7 (Content Protection).

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8 9

10

11 12

13

14 15

16

34

35

36

37

38

- 22 If content is offered claiming conformance to this IOP, the content author is encouraged to use the
- HTTP-URL construction as defined in [9], section 5.1.4.

24 **8.5. DASH-IF IOP Main**

25 **8.5.1.** Introduction

- For the support of broad set of use cases the DASH-IF IOP Main Interoperability Point is defined.
- 27 In addition the features of DASH-264/AVC main as defined in section 8.2 the interoperability
- point requires DASH clients for real-time segment parsing and 10-bit HEVC.
- 29 The compliance to DASH-IF IOP main may be signalled by a @profile attribute with the value
- 30 "http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash-if-main"

31 **8.5.2. Definition**

- A client that attempts to consume content generated conforming to this IOP shall support the following features:
 - All features required for DASH-264/AVC high as defined in section 8.3.
 - H.265/MPEG-H HEVC Main Profile Main Tier at level 4.1 as defined in section 6.2 together with all HEVC-related requirements and recommendation in section 6.2.
 - H.265/MPEG-H HEVC Main 10 Profile Main Tier at level 4.1 as defined in section 6.2 together with all HEVC-related requirements and recommendation in section 6.2.
- 39 Content shall only be authored claiming conformance to this IOP if such a client can properly play
- 40 the content. In addition, the content shall follow the mandatory aspects and should take into ac-
- 41 count the recommendations and guidelines for content authoring documented in section 8.3 and
- 42 HEVC-related issues in section 6.2.

- 1 If the content is authored such that it also conforms to DASH-264/AVC high as defined in section
- 2 8.3, then the profile identifier for DASH-264/AVC high shall be added as well. If the profile iden-
- 3 tifier is missing, the content may be considered as HEVC only content.
- 4 If content is offered claiming conformance to this IOP, the content author is encouraged to use the
- 5 HTTP-URL construction as defined in [9], section 5.1.4.

9. Multi-Channel Audio Extension

7 **9.1. Scope**

- 8 The Scope of the Multichannel Audio Extension is the support of audio with additional channels
- 9 and codecs beyond the basic audio support as specified in the DASH-AVC/264 base, which is
- 10 limited to Stereo HE-AAC. Multichannel audio is widely supported in all distribution channels
- today, including broadcast, optical disc, and digital delivery of audio, including wide support in
- 12 adaptive streaming delivery.
- 13 It is expected that clients may choose which formats (codecs) they support.

14 **9.2. Technologies**

15 **9.2.1. Dolby Multichannel Technologies**

- 16 **9.2.1.1.** Overview
- 17 The considered technologies from Dolby for advanced audio support are:
 - Enhanced AC-3 (Dolby Digital Plus) [38]
- Dolby TrueHD [39]
- 20 AC-4 [66]

18

23

24

2526

27

28

21 9.2.1.2. DASH-specific issues

- 22 In the context of DASH, the following applies:
 - The signaling of the different audio codecs for the codecs parameters is documented in [38], [39] and [66] which also provides information on ISO BMFF encapsulation.
 - For E-AC-3 and AC-4 the Audio Channel Configuration shall use the "tag:dolby.com, 2014:dash:audio_channel_configuration:2011" as defined at http://dashif.org/identifiers/audio-source-data/.

Table 23 Dolby Technologies: Codec Parameters and ISO BMFF encapsulation

Codec	Codec Parameter	ISO BMFF Encapsulation	SAP type
Enhanced AC-3 [38]	ec-3	ETSI TS 102 366 Annex F [38]	1
Dolby TrueHD	mlpa	Dolby [39]	1
AC-4	ac-4	ETSI TS 103 190-1 Annex E [66]	1

29 **9.2.2. DTS-HD**

- 30 **9.2.2.1.** Overview
- 31 DTS-HD [40] comprises a number of profiles optimized for specific applications. More infor-
- mation about DTS-HD and the DTS-HD profiles can be found at www.dts.com.

1 9.2.2.2. DASH-specific issues

- 2 For all DTS formats SAP is always 1.
- 3 The signaling of the various DTS-HD profiles is documented in DTS 9302J81100 [37]. DTS
- 4 9302J81100 [37] also provides information on ISO BMFF encapsulation.
- 5 Additional information on constraints for seamless switching and signaling DTS audio tracks in
- 6 the MPD is described in DTS specification 9302K62400 [42].

Table 24: DTS Codec Parameters and ISO BMFF encapsulation

Codec	Codec rameter	Pa-	ISO BMFF Encapsulation	SAP type
DTS Digital Surround	dtsc		DTS 9302J81100 [37]	1
DTS-HD High Resolution and DTS-HD Master Audio	dtsh			
DTS Express	dtse			
DTS-HD Lossless (no core)	dtsl			

8

9

17

18 19

20

21

22 23

24

7

9.2.3. MPEG Surround

10 **9.2.3.1.** Overview

- MPEG Surround, as defined in ISO/IEC 23003-1:2007 [41], is a scheme for coding multichannel
- signals based on a down-mixed signal of the original multichannel signal, and associated spatial
- parameters. The down-mix shall be coded with MPEG-4 High Efficiency AAC v2 according to section 5.3.3.
- 15 MPEG Surround shall comply with level 4 of the Baseline MPEG Surround profile.

16 9.2.3.2. DASH-specific issues

In the context of DASH, the following applies for audio codecs

- The signaling of the different audio codecs for the codecs parameters is according to RFC6381 [13] is documented in Table 25. Table 25 also provides information on ISO BMFF encapsulation.
- The content is expected to be prepared according to the MPEG-DASH Implementation Guidelines [9] to make sure each (sub-)segment starts with a SAP of type 1.

Table 25 Codecs parameter according to RFC6381 [13] and ISO BMFF encapsulation for MPEG Surround codec

Codec	Codec Parameter	ISO BMFF Encapsulation	SAP type
MPEG Surround [41]	mp4a.40.30	ISO/IEC 14496-14 [8]	1

- Note: Since MPEG Surround is based on a down-mix coded with AAC-LC and HE-AAC, for the
- above mentioned "Codec Parameters" the following is implied:
- 27 mp4a.40.30 = AOT 2 + AOT 5 + AOT 30

1 9.2.4. MPEG-4 High Efficiency AAC Profile v2, level 6

2 **9.2.4.1.** Overview

9

10

11

12

13 14

1516

17

18 19

20 21

- 3 Support for multichannel content is available in the HE-AACv2 Profile, starting with level 4 for
- 4 5.1 and level 6 for 7.1. All MPEG-4 HE-AAC multichannel profiles are fully compatible with the
- 5 DASH-AVC/264 baseline interoperability point for stereo audio, i.e. all multichannel decoders
- 6 can decode DASH-IF IOPS stereo content.

7 9.2.4.2. DASH-specific issues

- 8 In the context of DASH, the following applies for the High Efficiency AAC v2 Profile
 - The content shall be prepared according to the MPEG-DASH Implementation Guidelines [9] to make sure each (sub-)segment starts with a SAP of type 1.
 - Signaling of profile levels is not supported in RFC 6381 but the channel configuration shall be signaled by means of the **ChannelConfiguration** element in the MPD.
 - The signaling of MPEG-4 High Efficiency AAC v2 for the codecs parameters is according to RFC6381 [13] and is documented in Table 26. Table 26 also provides information on the ISO BMFF encapsulation.
 - For all HE-AAC bitstreams, explicit backward-compatible signaling of SBR shall be used.
 - The content should be prepared incorporating loudness and dynamic range information into the bitstream also considering DRC Presentation Mode in ISO/IEC 14496-3 [14], Amd. 4.
 - Decoders shall support decoding of loudness and dynamic range related information, i.e. dynamic_range_info() and MPEG4_ancillary_data() in the bitstream.

Table 26 Codecs parameter according to RFC6381 [13] and ISO BMFF encapsulation

Codec	Codec Parameter	ISO BMFF Encapsulation	SAP type
MPEG-4 AAC Profile [14]	mp4a.40.2	ISO/IEC 14496-14 [15]	1
MPEG-4 HE-AAC Profile [14]	mp4a.40.5	ISO/IEC 14496-14 [15]	1
MPEG-4 HE-AAC v2 Profile [14]	mp4a.40.29	ISO/IEC 14496-14 [15]	1

- Note: Since both, HE-AAC and HE-AACv2 are based on AAC-LC, for the above mentioned "Co-
- dec Parameters" the following is implied:
- 24 mp4a.40.5 = AOT 2 + AOT 5

25 **9.2.5. MPEG-H 3D Audio**

- 26 **9.2.5.1.** Overview
- 27 MPEG-H 3D Audio (MHA) including carriage in the ISO BMFF is specified in Amd. 2 of ISO/IEC
- 28 23008-3 [67].

32

- 29 **9.2.5.2. DASH-specific issues**
- 30 Storage of MHA elementary streams in the ISO BMFF shall be according to ISO/IEC 23008-3
- 31 [67] with the following constraints:
 - An audio sample shall consist of a single MHA access unit
- The parameter values of MHADecoderConfigurationRecord and MHASampleEntry shall be consistent with the configuration in the MHA elementary stream

- referenceChannelLayout shall be 'ChannelConfiguration' according to ISO/IEC 23001-8 [52].
- MHA bit streams shall contain an extension element of type ID_EXT_ELE_AUDIOPRE-ROLL as specified in ISO/IEC 23008-3 sub- clause 5.5.5. [67]. At the start of each segment, the audio pre-roll extension payload of the first access unit in that Segment shall contain a valid configuration structure (AudioPreRoll.Config()) and should contain at least one pre-roll frame (AudioPreRoll.numPreRollFrames > 0).

Table 27 Codecs parameter and ISO BMFF encapsulation

Code	Codec Parameter	ISO BMFF Encapsulation	SAP Type
MPEG-H 3D Audio	mha[1,2]	ISO/IEC 23008-3:2015 Amd. 2	1

9.3. Client Implementation Guidelines

Independent of the codec, a client that supports one or more codecs of multichannel sound play-back should exhibit the following characteristics:

- Playback multichannel sound correctly given the client operating environment. As an example, if the audio track delivers 5.1 multichannel sound, the client might perform one or more of the following: decode the multichannel signal on the device and output either 6ch PCM over HDMI, or pass that multichannel audio with no changes to external AVRs, or if the device is rendering to stereo outputs such as headphones, either correctly downmix that multi-channel audio to 2-channel sound, or select an alternate stereo adaptation set, or other appropriate choices.
- Adaptively and seamless switch between different bitrates as specified in the adaptation sets according to the playback clients logic. Seamless switching is defined as no perceptible interruption in the audio, and no loss of A/V sync. There is no expectation that a client can seamlessly switch between formats.

9.4. Extensions

9.4.1. General

- **9.4.1.1. Definitions**
- 27 A multichannel audio client at least supports the following features:
 - All DASH-related features as defined in section 3 of this document.
 - content protection based on common encryption and key rotation as defined in section 7. And specifically, the client supports MPD-based parsing and movie box based parsing of DRM related parameters for common encryption.
 - The client implementation guidelines in section 9.3.

9.4.1.2. Recommendations

- 34 If content is offered claiming conformance to any extension in this section, the content author is
- encouraged to use the HTTP-URL construction as defined in [9], section 5.1.4.

1 **9.4.2. Dolby Extensions**

2 **9.4.2.1.** Introduction

- 3 For the support of Dolby advanced audio support, three additional extensions are defined.
- 4 Conformance to *DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with Enhanced AC-3* (Dolby Digital Plus)
- 5 [38] may be signaled by an Oprofile attribute with the value
- 6 "http://dashif.org/guidelines/dashif#ec-3".
- 7 Conformance to DASH-IF multichannel extension with Dolby TrueHD may be signaled by an
- 8 @profile attribute with the value "http://dashif.org/guide-
- 9 lines/dashif#mlpa".
- 10 Conformance to DASH-IF multichannel extension with AC-4 may be signaled by an @profile
- attribute with the value "http://dashif.org/quidelines/dashif#ac-4".
- 12 **9.4.2.2.** Supporters
- 13 These extensions are supported by the following DASH IF members: Dolby, DTS, Fraunhofer,
- 14 BuyDRM, Sony.
- 15 **9.4.2.3. Definition**
- 16 Content may be authored claiming conformance to *DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with*17 *Enhanced AC-3*
 - if the content is multichannel audio content as defined in section 9.4.1, and
 - if a client can properly play the content by supporting at least the following features
 - all multichannel audio client features as defined in section 9.4.1
 - Enhanced AC-3 (Dolby Digital Plus) [38] and the DASH-specific features defined in section 9.2.1.2
- Content may be authored claiming conformance to *DASH-IF multichannel extension with Dolby*TrueHD
 - if the content is multichannel audio content as defined in section 9.4.1, and
 - if a client can be properly play the content by supporting at least the following features
 - all multichannel audio client features as defined in section 9.4.1
 - Dolby TrueHD and the DASH-specific features defined in section 9.2.1.2
 - Content may be authored claiming conformance to DASH-IF multichannel extension with AC-4 DASH-IF multichannel extension with Dolby TrueHD
 - if the content is multichannel audio content as defined in section 9.4.1, and
 - if a client can be properly play the content by supporting at least the following features
 - all multichannel audio client features as defined in section 9.4.1
 - AC-4 and the DASH-specific features defined in section 9.2.1.2

343536

18

19

2021

22

25

26

27

28

29

30

31

32

33

9.4.3. DTS-HD Interoperability Points

9.4.3.1. Introduction

- 38 For the support of DTS advanced audio support, four additional extensions are defined.
- 39 Conformance to DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with DTS Digital Surround may be sig-
- 40 naled by a @profile attribute with value "http://dashif.org/quide-
- 41 lines/dashif#dtsc".

- 1 Conformance to DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with DTS-HD High Resolution and DTS-
- 2 HD Master Audio may be signaled by a @profile attribute with value
- 3 "http://dashif.org/guidelines/dashif#dtsh"
- 4 Conformance to DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with DTS Express may be signaled by a
- 5 @profile attribute with value "http://dashif.org/guidelines/dashif#dtse"
- 6 Conformance to DASH-IF multichannel extension with DTS-HD Lossless (no core) may be sig-
- 7 naled by a @profile attribute with value "http://dashif.org/guide-
- 8 lines/dashif#dtsl"
- 9 **9.4.3.2.** Supporters
- 10 These extensions are supported by the following DASH IF members: Dolby, DTS, Fraunhofer,
- 11 BuyDRM, Sony.

16

17

18 19

2021

22

23

2425

2627

28

29

30

31

34

35

3637

- 12 **9.4.3.3. Definition**
- 13 Content may be authored claiming conformance to *DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with*14 *DTS Digital Surround*
 - if the content is multichannel audio content as defined in section 9.4.1, and
 - if a client can be properly play the content by supporting at least the following features
 - all multichannel audio client features as defined in section 9.4.1
 - DTS and the DASH-specific features defined in section 9.2.2.2

Content may be authored claiming conformance to DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with DTS-HD High Resolution and DTS-HD Master Audio

- if the content is multichannel audio content as defined in section 9.4.1, and
- if a client can be properly play the content by supporting at least the following features
 - all multichannel audio client features as defined in section 9.4.1
 - DTS-HD High Resolution and DTS-HD Master Audio and the DASH-specific features defined in section 9.2.2.2

Content may be authored claiming conformance to DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with DTS Express

- if the content is multichannel audio content as defined in section 9.4.1, and
- if a client can be properly play the content by supporting at least the following features
 - all multichannel audio client features as defined in section 9.4.1
 - DTS-HD Express and the DASH-specific features defined in section 9.2.2.2
- Content may be authored claiming conformance to *DASH-IF multichannel extension with DTS-HD Lossless (no core)*
 - if the content is multichannel audio content as defined in section 9.4.1, and
 - if a client can be properly play the content by supporting at least the following features
 - all multichannel audio client features as defined in section 9.4.1
 - DTS-HD Lossless (no core) and the DASH-specific features defined in section 9.2.2.2
- 38 **9.4.4. MPEG Surround Interoperability Points**
- 39 **9.4.4.1.** Introduction
- 40 For the support of MPEG Surround advanced audio support the following extension is defined.

- 1 Conformance to DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with MPEG Surround according to
- 2 ISO/IEC 23003-1:2007 [41] may be signaled by an @profile attribute with the value
- 3 "http://dashif.org/guidelines/dashif#mps".
- 4 **9.4.4.2.** Supporters
- 5 These extensions are supported by the following DASH IF members: Dolby, DTS, Fraunhofer,
- 6 BuyDRM, Sony.
- **7 9.4.4.3. Definition**
- 8 Content may be authored claiming conformance to DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with
- 9 MPEG Surround

11

13

28

29

30 31

34

35

- if the content is multichannel audio content as defined in section 9.4.1, and
- if a client can be properly play the content by supporting at least the following features
- all multichannel audio client features as defined in section 9.4.1
 - ISO/IEC 23003-1:2007 and the DASH-specific features defined in section 9.2.3.2

14 9.4.5. MPEG HE-AAC Multichannel Interoperability Points

- 15 **9.4.5.1.** Introduction
- 16 Conformance to DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with HE-AACv2 level 4 [14] may be sig-
- 17 naled by an @profile attribute with the value "http://dashif.org/guide-
- 18 lines/dashif#heaac-mc51".
- 19 Conformance to DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with HE-AACv2 level 6 [14] may be sig-
- 20 naled by an @profile attribute with the value "http://dashif.org/guide-
- 21 lines/dashif#heaac-mc71".
- 22 **9.4.5.2.** Supporters
- These extensions are supported by the following DASH IF members: Dolby, DTS, Fraunhofer,
- 24 BuyDRM, Sony.
- 25 **9.4.5.3. Definition**
- 26 Content may be authored claiming conformance to DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with
- 27 HE-AACv2 level 4
 - if the content is multichannel audio content as defined in section 9.4.1, and
 - if a client can be properly play the content by supporting at least the following features
 - all multichannel audio client features as defined in section 9.4.1
 - HE-AACv2 level 4 [14] and the DASH-specific features defined in section 9.2.4.2
- Content may be authored claiming conformance to *DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with*HE-AACv2 level 6
 - if the content is multichannel audio content as defined in section 9.4.1, and
 - if a client can be properly play the content by supporting at least the following features
- all multichannel audio client features as defined in section 9.4.1
- HE-AACv2 level 6 [14] and the DASH-specific features defined in section 9.2.4.2

1 9.4.6. MPEG-H 3D Audio Interoperability Points

- **2 9.4.6.1.** Introduction
- 3 Compliance to DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with MPEG-H 3D Audio [x] may be sig-
- 4 naled by a @profile attribute with the value http://dashif.org/guide-
- 5 lines/dashif#mha[1,2].
- 6 **9.4.6.3. Definition**
- 7 Content may be authored claiming conformance to DASH-IF multichannel audio extension with
- 8 MPEG-H 3D Audio

9

10

- if the content is multichannel audio content as defined in section 9.4.1, and
- if a client can properly play the content by supporting at least the following features:
- o all multichannel audio client features as defined in section 9.4.1,
- o MHA and the DASH-specific features defined in section 9.4.6.

Annex A Examples for Profile Signalling

2 Example 1

1

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

31

32

33

34

35

36

37

38

39

40

41

42

43

44

- In this case DASH-IF IOP content is offered, but in addition a non-conforming Adaptation Set is added
- 5 Here is an example for an MPD:
 - MPD@profiles="urn:mpeg:dash:profile:isoff-on-demand:2011, http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264"
 - o AdaptationSet@profiles="urn:mpeg:dash:profile:isoff-on-demand:2011, http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264"
 - o AdaptationSet@profiles = "http://dashif.org/quidelines/dash264"
 - o AdaptationSet@profiles ="urn:mpeg:dash:profile:isoff-on-demand:2011"

Pruning process for IOP http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264 results in

- MPD@profiles ="http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264"
 - o AdaptationSet@profiles ="http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264"
 - o AdaptationSet@profiles ="http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264"
- It is now required that the pruned MPD conforms to DASH-IF IOP.

18 Example 2

In this case DASH-IF IOP content is offered, but in addition a non-conforming Adaptation Set is added and one DASH-IF Example Extension Adaptation Set is added with the virtual IOP signal http://dashif.org/guidelines/dashif#extension-example.

Here is an example for an MPD:

- MPD@profiles = "urn:mpeg:dash:profile:isoff-on-demand:2011, http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264, http://dashif.org/guidelines/dashif#extension-example"
 - o @id = 1,AdaptationSet@profiles = "urn:mpeg:dash:profile:isoff-ondemand:2011, http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264"
 - o @id = 2,AdaptationSet@profiles ="http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264"
 - o @id = 3, AdaptationSet@profiles = "urn:mpeg:dash:profile:isoff-ondemand:2011, http://dashif.org/guidelines/dashif#extension-example"

Pruning process for profile http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264 results in

- MPD@profiles="http://dashif.org/quidelines/dash264"
 - o @id = 1, AdaptationSet@profiles="http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264"
 - o @id = 2, AdaptationSet@profiles="http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264"

It is now required that the pruned MPD conforms to DASH-IF IOP.

Pruning process for profile http://dashif.org/guidelines/dashif#extension-example results in

- MPD@profiles="http://dashif.org/guidelines/dash264"
 - o @id = 3, AdaptationSet@profiles="http://dashif.org/guidelines/dashif# extension-example"

It is now required that the pruned MPD conforms to DASH-IF Example Extension Adaptation Set.

Annex B Live Services - Use Cases and Architecture

2 **B.1** Baseline Use cases

3 B.1.1 Use Case 1: Live Content Offered as On-Demand

- 4 In this case content that was distributed as live is offered in a separate Media Presentation as
- 5 On-Demand Content.

6 B.1.2 Use Case 2: Scheduled Service with known duration and Operating at live edge

- 8 In this case a service started a few minutes ago and lasts 30 minutes. The duration is known
- 9 exactly and also all segment URLs are known. The timeshift buffer is short. This may for ex-
- ample be a live service for which the service provider wants to ensure that only a small window
- is accessible. The content is typically be pre-canned, but offered in a scheduled manner.

12 **B.1.3** Use Case 3: Scheduled Service with known duration and Operating at live edge and time shift buffer

- 14 In this case a service started a few minutes ago and lasts 30 minutes. The duration is known
- exactly and also all segment URLs are known. The timeshift buffer is long. This may for ex-
- ample be a service for which the service provider wants to ensure that the content is made
- 17 available in a scheduled manner, e.g. no client can access the content earlier than scheduled by
- 18 the content provider. However, after the live edge is completed, the content is available for
- 19 24h. The content is typically pre-canned.

20 **B.1.4** Use Case 4: Scheduled Live Service known duration, but unknown Segment URLs

- In this case a live service started a few minutes ago and lasts 30 minutes. The duration is known
- 23 exactly but the segment URLs are unknown, as for example some advertisement may be added
- on the fly. Otherwise this service is similar to use case 3.

25 **B.1.5** Use Case 5: 24/7 Live Service

- In this case a live service started that may have started a long time ago is made available. Ad
- 27 breaks and operational updates may be done with a 30sec pre-warning. The duration is un-
- 28 known and also the segment URLs, the exact set of provided media components (different
- 29 language tracks, subtitles, etc.) are unknown, as for example some advertisement may be added
- on the fly. Otherwise this service is similar to use case 3.

31 B.1.6 Use Case 6: Approximate Media Presentation Duration Known

- 32 In this case a live service starts at a specific time. The duration is known approximately and
- also all segment URLs are known for the approximate duration. Towards the end of the Media
- 34 Presentation, the Media Presentation duration may be extended or may be finally determined
- 35 by providing an update of the MPD.

B.2 Baseline Architecture for DASH-based Live Service

1

23

4

5

6 7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14 15

26

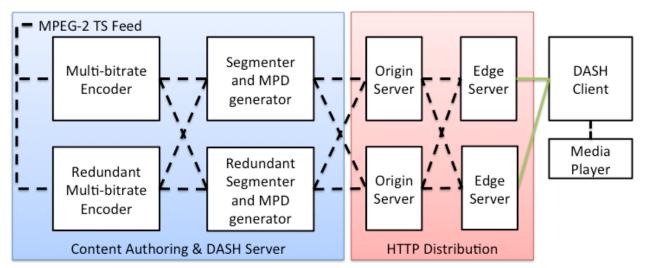


Figure 22 Typical Deployment Scenario for DASH-based live services

The figure depicts a redundant set-up for Live DASH with unicast. Function redundancy is added to mitigate the impact of function failures. The redundant functions are typically connected to multiple downstream functions to mitigate link failure impacts.

An MPEG2-TS stream is used often as feed into the encoder chain. The multi-bitrate encoder produces the required number of Representations for each media component and offers those in one Adaptation Set. In the context of this document is assumed that content is offered in the ISO BMFF live profile with the constraints according to v2 of this document. The encoder typically locks to the system clock from the MPEG2-TS stream. The encoder forwards the content to the segmenter, which produces the actual DASH segments and handles MPD generation and updates. Content Delivery Network (CDN) technologies are typically used to replicate the content to multiple edge servers. Note: the CDN may include additional caching hierarchy layers, which are not depicted here.

Clients fetch the content from edge servers using HTTP (green connection) according to the MPEG-DASH and DASH-IF IOP specification. Different protocols and delivery formats may be used within the CDN to carry the DASH segments from the segmenter to the Edge Server. For instance, the edge server may use HTTP to check with its parent server when a segment is not (yet) in the local cache. Or, segments may be pushed using IP Multicast from the origin server to relevant edge servers. Other realizations are possible, but are outside of the normative scope of this document.

In some deployments, the live service is augmented with ad insertion. In this case, content may not be generated continuously, but may be interrupted by ads. Ads itself may be personalized, targeted or regionalized.

B.3 Distribution over Multicast

This section describes a baseline architecture for DASH Live Services for broadcast distribution. The intention of the baseline architecture is in particular to identify robustness and failure issue and give guidance on procedures to recover.

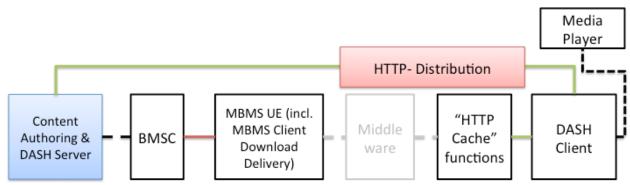


Figure 23 Typical Deployment Scenario for DASH-based live services partially offered through MBMS (unidirectional FLUTE distribution)

The same content authoring and DASH server solution as shown in Figure 1 are considered in this baseline architecture. The DASH Segmenter (cf. Fig.1) provides DASH segments of typically one quality representation into the BM-SC, which sends the segments using MBMS Download (as sequence of files using IETF FLUTE protocol) to the MBMS User Equipment (UE). The MBMS UE includes the needed MBMS download delivery client functions to recover the media segments from the FLUTE reception. The MBMS UE makes the segments through a local HTTP Cache function available to the DASH client. The DASH client uses HTTP (green line) to retrieve the segments from the device local cache.

- In case the MBMS reception is not possible for that Video Session, the DASH client can use unicast HTTP to acquire the stream (according to previous section).
- Note, the objective of the client architecture realization here is on using a generic DASH client for unicast and broadcast. More customized implementations are possible.

B.4 Typical Problems in Live Distribution

B.4.1 Introduction

- Based on the deployment architectures in Figure 22 and Figure 23 a few typical problems in
- 19 DASH-based ABR distribution are explained.

B.4.2 Client Server Synchronization Issues

- In order to access the DASH segments at the proper time as announced by the segment availability times in the MPD, client and server need to operate in the same time source, in general a globally accurate wall-clock, for example provided by NTP or GPS. There are different reasons why the DASH client and the media generation source may not have identical time source,
- 25 such as

- DASH client is off because it does not have any protocol access to accurate timing. This may for example be the case for DASH clients that are running in the browser or on top of a general-purpose HTTP stack.
- DASH client clock drifts against the system clock and the DASH client is not synchronizing frequently enough against the time-source.
- The segmenter synchronized against a different time source than DASH client.
- There may be unknown delay on the ingest to the server/cache whether the segment is accessible. This is specifically relevant if MBMS is used as the contribution link resulting in transport delay.
- It may also be that the MPD provides the availability times at the segmenter, but the actual availability should be the one on the origin server.

• There may be a delay from segmenter to the origin server which is known by edge/origin, but there may not be sufficient ways to signal this delay.

B.4.3 Synchronization Loss of Segmenter

- The segmenter as depicted in Figure 22 may lose synchronization against the input timeline for reasons such as power-outage, cord cuts, CRC losses in the incoming signals, etc. In this case:
 - Loss of synchronization may result that the amount of lost media data cannot be predicted which makes the generation of continuous segments difficult.
 - The Segmenter cannot predict and correct the segment timeline based on media presentation timestamps, since the presentation timeline may contain a discontinuity due to the synchronization loss
 - o a loss of sync (e.g. CRC failure on the input stream)
 - o a power glitch on the source
 - o someone pulling a cable
 - There are cases where no media segments are available, but the MPD author knows this and just wants to communicate this to the receiver.

16 **B.4.4 Encoder Clock Drift**

1

2

3

4

5

6

7 8

9

10

11

12 13

14 15

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

2728

29 30

31 32

33

- In certain cases, the MBR encoder is slaved to the incoming MPEG-2 TS, i.e. it reuses the media time stamps also for the ISO BMFF.
 - What may occur that the encoder clock drifts between the sender and the receivers (longer term issue), e.g. due to encoder clock tolerance
 - o Example: Encoder produces frame every 39.97ms instead of 40ms
 - o Tolerance in MPEG-2 TS: 1 frame every 18 minutes
 - This may create issues in particular when an existing stream like for satellite is transcoded and segmented into DASH representations.
 - Annex A.8 of ISO 23009-1 handles drift control of the media timeline, but the impact on the segment availability time (i.e. MPD updates) is not considered or suggested.
 - In particular when the segment fetching engine of the client is only working with the segment availability timeline (so is not parsing the presentation timeline out of the segments), the segment fetching engine will not fetch the segments with the correct interval, leading to buffer underruns or increased e2e delay.
 - There is practical evidence that this is a problem in actual deployments, may result in drifts of minutes over hours.

B.4.5 Segment Unavailability

- When a server cannot serve a requested segment it gives an HTTP 404 response. If the segment
- 35 URL is calculated according to the information given in the MPD, the client can often inter-
- pret the 404 response as a possible synchronization issue, i.e. its time is not synchronized to
- 37 the time offered in the MPD.
- In the MBMS case, a 404 response is also likely to be caused by non-reparable transport errors.
- 39 This is even more likely if it has been possible to fetch segments according to the MPD infor-
- 40 mation earlier. Although the client M/W, which is normally located in the same device as the
- DASH player, knows what segments have been delivered via broadcast and which ones are
- 42 missing in a sequence, it cannot indicate this to the DASH client using standard HTTP re-
- 43 sponses to requests for media segments.

B.4.6 Swapping across Redundant Tools

- 2 In case of failures, redundant tools kick in. If the state is not fully maintained across redundant
- 3 tools, the service may not be perceived continuous by DASH client. Problems that may happen
- 4 at the encoder, that redundant encoders do not share the same timeline or the timeline is inter-
- 5 rupted. Depending on the swap strategy ("hot" or "warm"), the interruptions are more or less
- 6 obvious to the client. Similar issues may happen if segmenters fail, for example the state for
- 7 segment numbering is lost.

1

8

10

11

12 13

14

15

16

17

18

19 20

21

26

30

36

B.4.7 CDN Issues

- 9 Typical CDN operational issues are the following:
 - Cache Poisoning at times segment generation may be erroneous. The encoder can produce a corrupt segment, or the segment can become corrupted during upload to origin. This can happen for example if encoder connectivity fails in mid segment upload, leading to a malformed segment (with the correct name) being sent to edge and caching servers. The CDN then caches this corrupt segment and continues to deliver it to fulfill future requests, leading to widespread client failures.
 - Cache inconsistency with a dual origin scheme, identically named segments can be
 produced with slight differences in media time, due to clock drift or other encoder issues. These segments are then cached by CDNs and used to respond to client requests.
 If segments from one encoder are mixed with segments of another, it can lead to discontinuous playback experiences on the clients.

B.4.8 High End-to-end Latency

- End-to-end latency (also known as hand-waving latency) is defined as the accumulated delay between an action occurring in front of the camera and that action being visible in a buffered
- player. It is the sum of
- 25 1. Encoder delay in generating a segment.
 - 2. Segment upload time to origin server from the encoder.
- 27 3. Edge server segment retrieval time from origin
- 4. Segment retrieval time by the player from the edge server
- 5. The distance back from the live point at which the player chooses to start playback.
 - 6. Buffering time on the player before playback commences.
- In steps 1 through 4, assuming non-chunked HTTP transfer, the delay is a linear function of
- the segment duration. Overly conservative player buffering can also introduce unnecessary de-
- lay, as can choosing a starting point behind the live point. Generally the further behind live the
- 34 player chooses to play, the more stable the delivery system is, which leads to antagonistic de-
- 35 mands on any production system of low latency and stability.

B.4.9 Buffer Management & Bandwidth Estimation

- 37 The main user experience degradations in video streaming are rebuffering events. At the same
- 38 time, user experience is influenced by the quality of the video (typically determined by the
- 39 bitrate) as well as at least for certain cases on the end-to-end latency. In order to request the
- 40 access bitrate, the client does a bandwidth estimation typically based on the history and based
- on this and the buffer level in the client it decides to maintain or switch Representations.
- In order to compensate bandwidth variations, the client buffers some media data prior to play-
- out. More time buffer results less buffer under runs and less rebuffering, but increases end-to-
- end latency. In order to maximize the buffer in the client and minimize the end-to-end latency

- 1 the DASH client would like to request the media segment as close as possible to its actual
- 2 segment availability start time. However, this may cause issues in the playout as the in case of
- 3 bitrate variations, the buffer may drain quickly and result in playout starvation and rebuffering.

4 B.4.10 Start-up Delay and Synchronization Audio/Video

- 5 At the start-up and joining, it is relevant that the media playout is initiated, but that the delay
- 6 at start is reasonable and that the presentation is enabled such that audio and video are presented
- 7 synchronously. As audio and video Representations typically are offered in different sampling
- 8 rates, and segments of audio and video are not aligned at segment boundaries. Hence, for proper
- 9 presentation at startup, it is necessary that the DASH client schedules the presentation at the
- presentation time aligned to the over media presentation timeline.

11 **B.5 Advanced Use Cases**

12 **B.5.1** Introduction

13 Based on the above issues a few advanced use cases are considered.

14 B.5.2 Use Case 7: Live Service with undetermined end

- 15 In this case a live service started that may have started a long time ago is made available. The
- MPD update may be done with a 30sec pre-warning. The duration is unknown exactly but the
- segment URLs are unknown, as for example some advertisement may be added on the fly.
- 18 Otherwise this service is similar to use case 3.

19 B.5.3 Use Case 8: 24/7 Live Service with canned advertisement

- 20 In this case a live service started that may have started a long time ago is made available. The
- MPD update may be done with a 30sec pre-warning. The duration is unknown exactly but the
- segment URLs are unknown, as for example some advertisement may be added on the fly. The
- 23 advertisement itself is not a dynamic service, but available on a server as a pre-canned adver-
- 24 tisement.

25 **B.5.4** Use case 9: 24x7 live broadcast with media time discontinuities

- In other use cases, the content provider splices content such as programs and ads with inde-
- 27 pendent media timelines at the content provider.

28 B.5.5 Use case 10: 24x7 live broadcast with Segment discontinuities

- 29 Based on the discussions above, interruptions in encoding, etc., but presentation and media
- 30 timelines resume after loss of some segments.